OXFORD



Workbook

B1+

Intermediate Plus

Neil Wood



LUSION

Workbook



B1+

Intermediate Plus

Neil Wood

CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION	LESSON 0.1	LESSON 0.2	LESSON 0.3	LESSON 0.4
0.4	Vocabulary: Sport and fitness Grammar: Articles	Vocabulary: Travel Grammar: Quantifiers	Vocabulary: Technology Grammar: Conditionals	Vocabulary: Hobbies Grammar: Comparatives and superlatives
JNIT	VOCABULARY 1	GRAMMAR 1	READING ® / LISTENING ©	VOCABULARY 2
Trom the page to the screen	Film-making Vocabulary: Films and cinema Vlog	Present tenses Grammar animation	Our favourite blogs Strategy: Identifying different speakers Vocabulary: Collocations	The written word Vocabulary: The written word
	Review p.17 How to learn	n vocabulary p.96		
2 Back to nature	What a view! Vocabulary: Geographical features and landscapes Vlog	Future predictions, plans and schedules Grammar animation	• Wild travel plans Strategy: Anticipating likely language from the topic Pronunciation: Homophones	Worried about global warming Vocabulary: Environmental issues
	Review p.27 Exam skills	p.28 Listening Multiple-choi	ce task Use of English Key wo	ord transformation task
3 Get well soon	Illnesses and injuries Vocabulary: Illnesses and injuries Vlog	Question forms Grammar animation	The truth about unhealthy foods Strategy: Recognising a range of phrasal verbs Pronunciation: /ð/ and /θ/	Getting better Vocabulary: Treatments
0.30	Review p.39 How to learn	n vocabulary p.98		
4 This is who we are	You know me so well Vocabulary: Personality Vlog	Reported speech: statements and questions Grammar animation	Personality types Strategy: Recognising exemplification	Types of relatives Vocabulary: Family relationships Pronunciation: /ɔ:/ and /əʊ/
0.40	Review p.49 Exam skills	p.50 Listening <i>Multiple-cho</i>	ice task Use of English Cloze	task
5 The global economy	International trade Vocabulary: Trade Vlog	Modals: advice, obligation and prohibition Grammar animation	The global trade in waste Strategy: Listening for specific information	Saving up Vocabulary: Money and finance
	Review p.61 How to learn	n vocabulary p.100		
6 At home	House tour Vocabulary: Rooms, furniture and equipment Vlog	Relative clauses Grammar animation	Places to live Strategy: Evaluating positive and negative points	My kind of place Vocabulary: Types of homes Pronunciation: Compound nouns
	Review p.71 Exam skills	p.72 Listening T rue/false/no	ot given task Use of English V	Vord formation task
7 Learning for life	The education system Vocabulary: Schools Vlog	Verb patterns Grammar animation	Internet access Strategy: Identifying the main idea	Higher education Vocabulary: Higher education
o.74	Review p.83 How to learn	n vocabulary p.102		
8 More than one way to earn a living	Looking for a job Vocabulary: Applying for jobs Vlog	Habitual behaviour Grammar animation	How to succeed in an interview Strategy: Identifying different types of linking words	Crime Vocabulary: Crime
0.84				

2 Contents

VOCABULARY BOOSTER	p.104
FUNCTIONS BANK	p.112
WRITING BANK	p.114
WORD LIST	p.120

GRAMMAR 2	READING ® / LISTENING ©	GLOBAL SKILLS	SPEAKING	WRITING
Past and perfect tenses Grammar animation	The history of film Strategy: Nouns and verbs with the same form	Creative thinking and brainstorming	A discussion Strategy: Interacting Phrasebook: Having a discussion Interacting Pronunciation: Sentence stress	A review Strategy: Using varied vocabulary Phrasebook: Writing a review
Future continuous and	(R) A taste of the future	Dealing with a moral	An opening statement	An opinion essay
future perfect Grammar animation	Strategy: Using visuals	dilemma	Strategy: Using linking words Phrasebook: Organising your ideas	Strategy: Brainstorming for writing Phrasebook: Opinion essays
Reading Gapped-text task :	Speaking Answering question	 ns Writing An email How to	learn vocabulary p.97	
Talking about ability Grammar animation	R Zoonotic viruses - the future of pandemics? Strategy: Dealing with unknown words	Managing your emotions	Conversation Strategy: Preparing for a conversation Phrasebook: At the pharmacy	Instructions Strategy: Sequencing phrases for instructions Phrasebook: Sequencing
Reporting verbs	O Twins who mot ofter	Making a positive	Reacting to news	Description of a person
Grammar animation	Twins who met after 25 years apart Strategy: Understanding the order of events in a text	impression	Strategy: Using reported speech Phrasebook: Keeping the conversation going	Strategy: Using modifying adverbs Phrasebook: Describing people
Reading Short texts multip	le-choice task Speaking Role	-play task Writing An articl	e How to learn vocabulary p.99	
Modals: speculating in the past and present Grammar animation	R What is money? Strategy: Distinguishing between fact and speculation	Global consumers, global citizens?	Asking for and giving advice Strategy: Using a variety of functional phrases Phrasebook: Asking for and giving advice Pronunciation: Linking	An email of complaint Strategy: Selecting a suitable register
The passive: advanced structures Grammar animation	R Interesting and unique jobs Strategy: Recognising attitude from comment adverbs	Adapting to change Vocabulary: Change	Interview with a potential house sitter Strategy: Hesitating Phrasebook: Hesitating	An enquiry email Strategy: Using appropriate word order: indirect questions Phrasebook: Indirect questions
Reading Match headings to	parahraphs task Speaking (Comparing photos task Writ	ing Reply to an email How to learn	n vocabulary p.101
Wishes in the present Grammar animation	© Doing what you love Strategy: Inferring information Vocabulary: Compound adjectives	Good study habits	A debate Strategy: Using adverbs to add emphasis Phrasebook: Debating Pronunciation: The letter a	A for and against essay Strategy: Planning an essay Phrasebook: Writing an essay
Future in the past Grammar animation	Stealing beauty: Famous art thefts Strategy: Scanning: distinguishing proper nouns	Communication skills Vocabulary: Communication	Describing a crime scene Strategy: Making notes for a picture description task Phrasebook: Describing pictures Pronunciation: Stress for emphasis How to learn vocabulary p.103	A magazine article Strategy: Introducing quotations Phrasebook: Grabbing readers' attention

Contents 3

5



1 Match sentences 1-8 to rules A-F.

- 1 This bike is the most expensive one I've ever owned. _
- 2 Exercise is as important as diet for good health. ____
- 3 Abe listens to music while he's cycling to school. ___
- **4** Ellie spent ages looking online for a new exercise class.
- 5 The government has just published some new safety rules
- 6 My cousin is an engineer, and a football referee in her free time. ____
- 7 I love going to the cinema. It's so much better than watching films online. ____
- 8 When Kaheem visits a new city, he always goes for a run to help him get to know the place. ____
- A We use a / an when we talk about something for the first time and the when we mention it again.
- **B** We use a / an to say what someone's job is.
- **C** We use no article when we talk generally about something.
- **D** We use *the* when it is clear what we are talking about or when there is only one of something.
- **E** We use *the* with superlatives.
- **F** Some set phrases do not have rules. We say *go to school / work / hospital*; *go to the cinema / gym / shops*; *in the morning / evening*; *listen to the radio / watch the news*.

2 Choose the correct alternative.

- 1 Eva plays for **a** / local football team. / **The** team won the championship last season.
- 2 My dad is **a** / **the** teacher and my mum is **the** / manager of our local sports centre.
- 3 Senyo doesn't enjoy playing / the sport. He prefers to be a / spectator.
- 4 I watched / **the** news on TV last night and it had **a** / **the** report about GoodGym.
- 5 Do you prefer to do **an** / exercise in **the** / morning or after you come home from **the** / school?
- 6 A / The best way to stay healthy is to take / the regular exercise.

3 Complete the dialogue with a / an, the o

Α	Are you watching sports on ¹	internet
	again?	

- B No, I'm just downloading 2_____ new app.
- A What's it for?

В	I've decided to start ³ running. I've found ⁴ app that helps you get up off your sofa
	and become ⁵ runner. ⁶ app
۸	is called 'Couch to 5K'. How does it work?
	Well, you do three training sessions every week, and you
	can complete ⁷ 5km race after just nine weeks. There's ⁸ virtual coach that helps
	you with your workout. It makes ⁹ training really easy, apparently.
Α	What ¹⁰ information does it record?
	It records data to help you analyse 11
	progress of your running – for example, how far you run in each workout, and your time. You can also share data with other runners.
М	atch the words below to the definitions.
	coach compete court referee
	spectator track train
•	someone who makes sure players obey the rules in a
_	sports game
	the place where you run or cycle in a race
3	to practise in order to prepare for a sports event
4	the place where you play basketball, tennis or volleyball
5	to take part in a sport and try to win
6	someone who watches a sport
7	someone who instructs and advises a sportsperson or
	team
Co	omplete the sentences with the words below.
	athlete get fit opponent points race scores takes part in works out
1	The rules are simple: if you get more than
	anyone else, you win the game.
	Carlo at the gym every evening after school – that's why he's so fit.
3	Your in this game is a very good player – it will be hard to defeat her.
4	Until 2020, the Dubai World Cup was the world's most
_	expensive horse
5	There's no quick solution – if you want to, you have to do more exercise.
6	The winner of the Golden Boot is the player who
-	the most goals in the competition.
7	My aunt competed in the marathon in the
	2004 Olympics – she was a really good
8	Yasmin's a very keen tennis player – she at least one competition a month.
	omplete the questions with a / an , the or – (no article).
	nen write an answer for each question.
1	Whichsports do you enjoy watching?
2	Do you have favourite way to keep fit?
3	What is most popular sport in your country.

1		atch the sentence halves to complete the collocations.
		The best way to explore
		Do you prefer to stay If you want to meet
		In 1911, Roald Amundsen set off on
		Do you want to go
		There are lots of hotels, so don't book
	7	Taking tango lessons is a great way to experience
		Do you prefer to see
		Make sure that you book
		When I finish university, I plan to go
		a journey to the South Pole. the culture in Buenos Aires.
		your accommodation in advance.
		abroad and work as an English teacher.
		the local area is on foot or by bicycle.
		the sights on your own or take a guided tour?
		local people, it helps to learn the language.
		tickets for the tour – it's very popular.
	I	in a hotel or with a local family?
	J	backpacking before you start university?
2	M	atch the quotes to two of the collocations in Ex 1.
_		'We decided to stay in Barcelona for a few days to learn
	-	more about the town and its surroundings. One day, we
		took a tour of all the city's amazing street art and graffiti.'
	2	'We used a travel website to reserve a hotel room. We
		also went online and bought seats on a river boat tour.'
	2	0.Wh C. '.h ' '.h 1.W. 1 1 1 5 1
	3	'When I finished university in the UK, I travelled to France to work there for the summer. After a few months, I decided
		to buy a motorcycle and ride across Europe to Istanbul.'
	4	'When I travel, I like to just take a small rucksack, and I use local
		transport. Usually, the other passengers are really friendly and
		happy to talk to you.'
	5	'Lucky Jack – his dad took him on a business trip to Los Angeles.
		They visited places like Universal Studios and the Hollywood sign. And Jack had his own room in five-star accommodation.'
		sign. And Jack flad his own footh in five-stal accommodation.
2	Ch	noose the correct alternative.
-		These days all / most people book their tickets and
		accommodation online.
	2	In the summer, we usually go abroad for both / several weeks.
	3	How many / any times have you been backpacking?
	4	It's a very quiet place – little / not many people go there.
	5	Aaron spends all / every his free time working as a local tour guide.
	6	We love visiting London – each / most time we go there we find
		new areas to explore.
	7	Fatima's dad goes abroad on business all the time, but he has
	_	not many / little opportunity to see the sights.
	8	Some / Any of my friends work during the holidays, but a lot of
	0	them go travelling. I'm glad you had a good holiday – did you meet any / every
	9	interesting people?
	10	Most visitors to our town stay on the beach, but little / a few

want to experience the local culture.

4 Complete the blog post with the words and phrases below.

a few all any backpacking book both each experience explore meet most set off several sights stay

Y	TRAVEL BLOG
W.	A
1	
199	
1	A LAND
A	
7)	
27	
	NEW POST
	Hey everyone,
	I've just got back from the most amazing
	holiday - I ¹ went for three
	months with my best friend Keira. We visited
	of the countries in South-
	East Asia: Thailand, Cambodia, Vietnam
_	and Laos. We didn't bother to 3
	our accommodation in advance – we just
	bought flights to Bangkok and ⁴
	on our journey from there. We mostly
	travelled on local trains and buses, which
_	was a great way to ⁵ people.
	6time we arrived in a city or
	town, we found a cheap guest house to
	7 in. 8 places were
	pretty basic, especially the more remote
	ones but they were 9 incredibly
	ones, but they were ⁹ incredibly clean. Then we went out to ¹⁰
_	the local area. Everyone we met was really
	welcoming, and ¹¹ times we
	were invited to stay in people's homes.
	Keira and I ¹² wanted to
_	the culture of the places
	we visited. In Luang Prabang in Laos, we
	met a Buddhist monk who became our
	tour guide for the day – we wanted to
	see the ¹⁴ and he wanted to
	practise his English. Perfect! We didn't have
	problems travelling around –
	we felt very safe and I wouldn't hesitate to do
_	it again. Let me see maybe South America
	next time!
ь.	Hext time:
C	omplete the sentences so they are true for you.
	When I visit a new town, I like to
	When I visit a new town, I like to
-	M/h on you're troughting the heat was to
2	When you're travelling, the best way to
	is
3	On my last holiday, I

1	Cł	hoose the correc	t answer: A, B or C.		4 Write a sentence beginning with If that has the same			
	1	A computer is a group of devices which work together to process and store information.			meaning as the first sentence(s). 1 I'm a good driver, so I'm not worried about passing my			
	•		B program		driving test.			
	2	Something you open on a computer to start an operation or write a document is a			2 Ben hopes to do well in his maths exam – he wants to			
			B window		study computer science at university.			
	3			are all examples of				
	•	computer		are all examples of	3 Updating your antivirus software every year makes your			
		50.000 S 40.000 S 40.	B software	C networks	computer more secure.			
	4		is a set of instruc					
		computer what			4 She can't find a part-time job, so she can't save money to			
		A update	B program	C network	buy a new laptop.			
	5		ets and phones all h	nave a				
		you can look at			5 hope see Maya today – then can invite her to my party			
			B hardware		this weekend.			
	6		d regular	to continue				
		working properl			6 Do you want to predict the future of technology? Then			
	_		B software		you need to look at the present.			
	7			other information that				
		allow a compute	B Network	C Coftware	5 Complete the dialogues between a student (A) and an IT			
	0			mputers connected	assistant (B). Use words from Ex 1 and the correct form of			
	0	together.		imputers connected	the verbs in brackets.			
			B program	C undate	Dialogue 1			
•	-			• apaate	A I have to study online next term. All my courses are on the university's ¹ , but it's sometimes difficult to			
2		Choose the correct alternative.			connect to them.			
	1	things yourself.	e a 3D printer, you c	an produce many	B I understand the problem. If large numbers of people			
	2		n on their microphor	205 W0	2 (study) online or 3 (work)			
	_		' t be able to hear th		from home, it ⁴ (increase) pressure on the			
	3			me, she would learn	system.			
	_	how to program		ne, she would team	A So, if the system can't support the increase in users this			
	4			your computer will	term, it ⁵ (slow) down in the future. Is that			
		work better.			right?			
	5	If computers did	ln't exist, many thing	gs will / would take	B Yes, that's correct.			
		longer to do.			Dialogue 2			
	6	If Dan doesn't ge study for his exa		now will / would he	A My computer is working very slowly. I'm worried I might have a virus.			
	7			virus software, their	B If you had a virus, that ⁶ (be) quite serious. Most computers have ⁷ to protect them			
				ngerous programs.	from viruses. However, you need to check that you are			
	8		ws / knew what the	y are doing, writing	getting regular 8to stay protected.			
	_	basic software is		,	A How do I do that?			
	9	with it?	ofactory, what will /	would you make	B If you ⁹ (click) on 'Settings', that will open			
					B If you ⁹ (click) on 'Settings', that will open a new ¹⁰ Then click on the link called			
3				or zero. Then match	'Security'.			
		ne rules to the ser		1	Dialogue 3			
	1			al to talk about unreal	A I'm looking at my laptop and the 11 has			
		results		t or future and their	turned blue. There's a message saying there's a serious			
	2			al to talk about facts	problem.			
	_		e generally true		B OK. If you see this message, it usually ¹² (mean) there's a problem with the computer equipment.			
	3		condition		In other words, it's a problem with the ¹³			
			events and their resu		A Can you help me with that?			
					B Sure. You probably have too many ¹⁴			
					running at the same time. If you close all of them, your			
					laptop ¹⁵ (work) better when you start			
					it again.			

1	Match the quotes to the words below. 5 None of my friends are good at art, but Ryan is					an is
	baking decorating cakes drawing gardening painting playing bingo	(artistic) of all of us.Everyone complained when the sewing class was cancelled, but Mia objected (strong).				
	sculpture sewing stamp collecting 1 'You can create some beautiful pictures using just a	7	Could you talk	-	_ (loud) pleas	
	pencil and paper.'		the TV. Llove baking –	it's one of	(e	niovable)
	2 'Issie makes all her own clothes by hand – she doesn't		hobbies I've e	ver done.		
	use a machine.' 3 'Freddie loves making bread, cakes and biscuits – his				is difficult, but it, you may sc	
	family are really happy too.'					week, but Syed
	4 'I take these off letters that people send me from around the world and stick them in a book.'			(frequ		he's only been
	5 'You have numbers on a card. The first person to cross out all their numbers wins.'				survey about h	nobbies. m of the words
	6 'Harry enjoys growing flowers as well as fruit and vegetables.'		orackets.	minary with	the correction	mortile words
	7 'I use a brush to make pictures with strong colours – they express how I feel.'			Girls	Boys	
	8 'Tamsin is learning to make models of people using all	b	aking	1411	III	
	sorts of different materials.'	d	ancing	IIII	III	
	9 'He uses sweets and sugar to make the things he bakes look beautiful as well as good to eat!'	d	rama	III	IIII	
2	Complete the dialogue with words from Ex 1.	g	ardening	1411	III	
	Chidi I'm thinking of taking up a new hobby. Kate I thought you were keen on 1?	р	ainting	III	IIII	
	You've got books full of beautiful ones from all over the world!		hotography	II	1111	
	Chidi I'm bored with that now. What does the local college	re	eading	IIII	1	
	website say? Kate They run art classes at weekends. You can do	у	oga	IIII	II	
	drawing and 2	waa 2 the giri Als tha (po pa thi rea for Wh 10 _ thi bo	s photography (e 3 Is think baking o, girls think o an boys. Howe opular) among inting is 7 Is doesn't mea dding is 8 Is boys, reading boys, reading inting is 1 Is omes to onk dancing is 1 Iys and girls th	y. For girls, ba exciting) activ (interesting g is 4 of gardening 5 ever, photogra g girls than bo (eas n they are mo (enjo s the 9 o more physic (frequently) th 11 ink drama car	ities, and photes. The survey security. (creative) phy is 6 ys. Overall, boy ys than girls, a	ening were the cography was shows that than boys. (positively) ys think lthough ys also think rls – in fact, yable) activity. oys do yoga oys also oga. Both out it's a little
2					ey are true fo	-
3	 3 Complete the sentences with the comparative or superlative form of the words in brackets. 1 I'm sure Chinese is a (hard) language to learn than English. 2 No one is smarter than Alisha – she's 				_ is more enjoy use	
			 because I find the most difficult subject at school because The most popular hobbies among my friends are 			
(clever) person I know. 3 If you speak English well, you can communicate						,
	(easy) with people from other countries.I'm really disappointed with this sculpture class – it's(interesting) than I expected.					

From the page to the screen



3

	1	
1	se 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	What can you remember about the vlog? Match the entence halves to make collocations. It's important to choose Don't look at the camera – just say There's a chance for everyone to play The hardest part is writing I've always wanted to direct It's hard for the audience to follow It's a good idea to rehearse We need someone who can design We can't use any The UK's most famous film
	B C D E F G H	the script, so we need to spend time on that. special effects as we don't have the money. a location that isn't too noisy. a film, so I'm really excited. the line and then walk away. the costumes and decorate the set. studios are located just outside London. a part, even a small one. the plot if the film's too long. your lines before we start filming.
		1.01 Watch or listen again and check.
2	1	atch the quotes to the collocations in Ex 1a. 'As an actor, it's important to practise what you have say.' 'She's the person in charge – she tells us all what to

b	▶ 1.01 Watch or listen again and check.
М	atch the quotes to the collocations in Ex 1a.
1	'As an actor, it's important to practise what you have to say.'
2	'She's the person in charge – she tells us all what to do.'
3	'We created computer images of monsters and dragons
4	'I enjoy making up stories and deciding what people will say.'
5	'My job is finding the best place to shoot the film.'
6	'You need to be creative and have an interest in clothes.
7	'The audience must be able to understand what's happening.'
8	'I enjoy pretending to be someone who's different from me.'

taking part ir	ng a student film for a college project. She is a a podcast interview. Complete the interview com this lesson.								
	Have you ever ¹ a film before?								
	No – and I'm really excited!								
interviewer	I bet! Did you write the ² yourself?								
Bea	Yes, with my friend Alex – he's going to a small part in the film too.								
Interviewer	Tell us a bit more about the film. Where is it ?								
Bea	Somewhere in the UK, at some time in the								
	future. It's about a group of people trying to								
	survive after an environmental disaster. It								
	should be easy to ⁵ the plot.								
Interviewer	Are you going to shoot it in a film								
	6?								
Bea	No, outdoors. We've chosen several different depending on the scene.								
Interviewer	What about the disaster scenes? Will you use								
	8 to create these?								
Bea	No, we don't have enough money for that. But my friend is going to ⁹ the costumes – she's studying fashion and her drawings are brilliant.								
Interviewer									
	Have you held auditions yet?								
Веа	Yes! The actors are busy rehearsing their already!								
REAL ENGLISH below.	Complete the dialogue with the phrases								
	ot playing it safe smashed it u're kidding, right								
	g a film and I want you to be in it.								
D 1.1C.	?								
	s. You were great as Macbeth in the college								
	absolutely ²								
B I don't kno	w I might be terrible.								
A Come on, y succeed, s	you're a really good actor. If you want to top ³ and take a few risks.								
	ζ, ' 4								
A Great! 5	<u>!</u>								

1	Read the sentences. In which sentence is the present simple or continuous used A for a habit or routine?	
	B to describe annoying repeated behaviour? C for a timetable / schedule?	
	D for something happening now / around now?	
	E for a fact / permanent situation?	
	A TV news team are filming in the street outside our house.	
	2 I normally check my messages when I wake up in the morning.	
	 Over 2 million people work in the US film and TV industry. 	
	4 Milos is always losing his phone and asking to borrow mine.	4 Complete the dialogue with the present simple or continuous
	5 My parents' flight leaves at 17.40 on Friday.	form of the verbs in brackets.
2	Choose the correct alternative. Then match the	A So, 1 (you have) a good summer?
	sentences to functions A–E in Ex 1.	B Yes, thanks. A film company 2 (shoot) a TV
	1 Bella meets / is meeting the director at the moment to discuss her part in the film	series on location down on the beach at the moment. 13 (work) on it as a runner.
	2 The next train doesn't arrive / isn't arriving until 10.30	A I heard about that. It 4 (sound) like fun. B Yes, it is. I only started last week, but so far I 5
	3 The Venice Film Festival takes / is taking place in	(really enjoy) it.
	August or September each year	A What does a runner do, exactly?
	4 Alice drives me crazy – she always forgets /	B Lots of things. For example, we ⁶ (start) at 6.00 a.m. every morning and I ⁷ (copy) that
	's always forgetting her lines!	day's script for the actors. I also ⁸ (take) orders
	5 People in the film industry often work / are often working very long days	for coffee and lunch Right now, I 9 (look for)
	6 Felix looks / is looking for a good location for our	a special tea for one of the actors. It's quite annoying – she
	opening scene	(always ask) for something different.
	7 I go / 'm going to university on my bike because it's	A Is the job well paid?
	near to my house	B Actually, runners on this show ¹¹ (not get) paid. I ¹² (know) it seems unfair, but it's good
	8 I'll meet you outside the cinema ten minutes before	experience. Like this week, I ¹³ (help) the
	the film starts / is starting	assistant director to organise the extras.
3	Are the verbs in bold stative (S) or dynamic (D)?	A It certainly ¹⁴ (seem) like you ¹⁵
	1 Do you prefer to watch films at the cinema or on	(have) a good time.
	TV at home?	B Yes, and I 16 (learn) a lot too. I have to
	2 That book looks interesting. Are you enjoying it?	17 (get) some experience to work in TV. 18 (want) to discuss it with the director when
	3 Amy's very creative – she designs her own clothes	the filming ¹⁹ (finish) next Friday.
	4 We're working as film extras to make some extra money	A Good luck! Text me as soon as you ²⁰ (hear)
	5 Being a set designer sounds like an interesting job	anything.
	6 I'm looking forward to seeing the new James Bond film.	5 Which of the verbs in brackets in Ex 4 are stative verbs?
	7 Ciaran knows he needs to study hard to get into university.	6 Imagine you have a summer job working for a film company and you want to work in the film business when you leave
	8 Send me a text when you arrive at the station	school. Complete the sentences with your own ideas.
		1 In my job I
		2 Every day I / we3 At the moment, I / we
		4 My boss is always
		5 hope when
		6 I have to as soon as / when

1.3 LISTENING

1 What can you remember about the tips for writing a successful blog? Complete the text with the words and phrases below.

be original come up with connect with create content focus on the positives get to the point imagination pay attention
First, try to ¹ – it's important to make your blog new and different from everyone else's. Use your ² to help you to ³
new ideas. It's always easier to write about what you know, so 4 about topics that you care about.
Try not to be boring – ⁵ quickly and don't write too much. When you read people's comments, t to ignore the negative ones and ⁶ Not
everyone will like what you write. But ⁷ to the readers who do enjoy your blog, and look for ways to 8your audience, like asking them to
suggest ideas for your next post.

2 You are going to listen to a podcast where three people talk about their favourite blogs. Before you listen, match titles 1–3 to photos A–C and decide which blog you would most like to read and why.











3 (1) 1.02 Listen to Part 1 of the podcast and complete the table.

	Title of blog	The reason they like it
Maria	<u> </u>	The writer always has
		to say.
Jas	1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 -	The writer knows
		subject.
Laura		The writer really
		her readers.

STRATEGY Identifying different speakers

When you listen to a radio show or podcast, you will need to understand which person is speaking to be able to follow a discussion. Pay attention to the accent, the speed and the tone of voice of the different speakers.

- 4 1.03 Read the strategy above. Then listen to Part 2 of the podcast. Which speaker talks about ...
 1 writing about what you are interested in?
 - telling stories to get your point across?concentrating on the positives?
 - 4 using your imagination? _____
 - 5 saying things in a new and interesting way? __
 - **6** being funny to entertain people?
 - 7 not writing too much? _____
 - 8 asking readers to communicate with you? ____
- **5** Read the strategy again. What helped you to identify each of the speakers in Ex 4?
- 6 1.03 Complete the sentences. Then listen to Part 2 again and check.
 - 1 River Rider is not a typical travel blog because Hannah doesn't just talk about the _____
 - In *River Rider*, Hannah writes about the _____ and ____ of the river.
 - 3 In Film of the Week, Raj imagines what a ______ would think of a film made 40 or 50 years ago.
 - 4 Raj wrote a review of the film Jaws from the shark's
 - 5 Some new things Laura writes about are ______ and ____ and
 - 6 Amy often asks her readers to _____ for her to write about.
- 7 Look back at Ex 2. Did the ideas in the podcast match your
- **8** Write a review of a blog or vlog you enjoy reading or watching. Think about ...
 - what you like about it.

ideas? Did anything surprise you?

• how the blogger / vlogger connects with their audience.

	1.04 Listen to eight people talking about different types	4 C	ho	ose the correc	t answer: A, B or C.		
	of writing they enjoy. Match them to the types of writing.	1				_	
	A fairy-tale B horror story		=	$\mathbf{E} M \mathbf{v}$	good re	eads	
	C mystery novel				800011		
	D non-fiction						
	E poetry		Int	roduce yourse	lf, please.		
	F romantic novel				and I'm a book	122	
	science fiction novel				write about the		
	H thriller			oks I've read and reviews online			
						10	
	Match words 1–10 to definitions A–J.				irite type of writing?	AND THE PARTY OF T	
	1 blogger 6 poet				something		
	2 chapter 7 post 3 cover 8 publisher				excitement. And it's always		
	4 editor 9 short story				ned until the very last ⁵	eps you guessing	
	5 journal 10 songwriter				•	<u> </u>	
					you don't like?		
	a company that edits, prints and sells books			not a big fan o			
	B the outside of a book or magazine	imagined future, space travel and other planets are so boring!					
	a written record of your thoughts and ideas, like a diary	What have you read recently?					
	D someone who regularly writes about a subject online		A book of stories by Philip Pullman – it's a rewriting of 50 7 by the brothers Grimm, like <i>Snow White</i> and				
	E a piece of fiction that is not as long as a novel				ese days I'm reading mo		
	F someone who creates the words to go with pieces of music				oks about history and p		
	G someone who reads and corrects a piece of text H a section of a book					onties.	
				-	recommendations?		
	someone who uses words to create images, feelings and emotions				n reading Sweet Sorrow		
	J to put a piece of writing online			•	and Fran. It's both funn		
					l. The picture on the from		
3 (Complete the sentences with the words below.		sto	ry perfectly - so	metimes you really can		
	editor horror journal poet poetry		its :	10	_!		
- 1	publisher short story songwriter						
:	1 Shakespeare is best known for his plays, but he also	1	Α	blogger	B publisher	C songwriter	
	wrote a lot of	2	Α	edit	B post	C write	
-	2 Some pop stars write their own music, but others use a to do it for them.	3	Α	fairy-tale	B poem	C thriller	
	A successful must fit a lot of information	4	Α	diary	B mystery	C poetry	
•	into just a few pages.	5	Α	chapter	B cover	C journal	
	4 Many people think <i>Dracula</i> is the best story	6	Α	non-fiction	B romantic fiction	C science fiction	
	of all time.	7	Α	fairy-tales	B thrillers		
	The most difficult thing for writers can be finding a	8	Α	poetry	B non-fiction	C science fiction	
				horror	B mystery	C romantic	
(Even the best writers need a good to help	10	Α	chapter	B cover	C publisher	
	them.	5 Complete the sentences so they are true for yo		for you.			
	7 The Divine Comedy is a long poem written by the Italian				ding/watching		
	Dante Alighieri.		_				
8	In World War 2, the schoolgirl Anne Frank kept a which was published as <i>Diary of a Young Girl</i> .	2	M	y favourite TV	/ film adaptation of a b	ook is	
	willen was published as blury of a fourig Gill.		_				
		3			of		
			n	offor Hilms / Pol	mantic fiction / thriller	s) because	
		Δ	M	v favourite wri	ter / poet / actor is		
		-		ecause	poet, actor is		
		5			ook covers are usually		

vocabulary on page 104.

6 VOCABULARY BOOSTER Now practise The written word

1 Underline the time exp	ression in the sentences.
--------------------------	---------------------------

- 1 This time last year they were revising for their exams.
- 2 Lucy has been working as a waitress since January.
- 3 Yesterday, I wrote my very first blog post.
- 4 When I arrived, my friends had already finished their drinks.
- 5 She has watched this thriller at least ten times.
- 6 I recognised your brother as soon as I saw him.
- 7 Darius has been researching his school project all evening he's really tired now.

2	Which	sentences	in	Ex 1	talk a	bout
---	-------	-----------	----	------	--------	------

- A a finished event that happened at a known time in the past? ____
- **B** an activity in progress at a certain time in the past? ___
- **C** a finished event that happened at some time in the past? ____
- D an action that started recently and is still in progress now? ____
- **E** an action that is finished but has a result we can see now? ____
- **F** a finished event that happened before another event in the past? ____

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs below.

	accept have leave live meet not finish read send text try wait
	Sara me three times already this morning.
	I can't upload this video – I to do it all evening.
3	At 7.30 a.m. this morning, we breakfast.
4	I my school project yet.
	Senyo in the US when he his friend Kyle.
	As soon as she my message, she the house to meet me.
	She her manuscript to ten publishers before one it.
8	I outside in the snow for ages – I'm freezing!

4 Complete the texts with the correct past or perfect form of the verbs in brackets. More than one answer may be possible.

Α

The other day, I heard the writer Robert Macfarlane on the radio. He _ (talk) about his book, The Lost Words, a collection of poems by Macfarlane and beautiful paintings of animals and plants by the artist Jackie Morris. How 2_ _ (come) up with the idea for the book? Well, it was when they 3_ _ (find) out that a well-known children's dictionary 4_ (decide) not to include many common names of animals, birds and flowers – replacing them with words like 'attachment', 'blog' and 'chatroom'. They 5_ _ (want) to celebrate nature and preserve some of these lost words. Since it was published in 2017, The Lost Words 6_ a worldwide bestseller, and many UK schools now have a

copy. Recently, Macfarlane and Morris 7_

together on a second book.

PHILOSOPHIÆ A rare book by the 18th-century scientist Sir Isaac Newton, PRINCIPIA MATHEMATICA Mathematical Principles, rec T. S. NEBTON, Test. Cdf. Cartal. Soc. Market Problems Locations, its Societaria Regula Stabili. _ (recently / sell) for IMPRIMATUR £22,000. The owners, a family in Wales, _ (clean) out their house when they ¹⁰ (find) the book on an old bookshelf. They took it to a book expert, Chris Albury, who 11 (confirm) that it was quite valuable. But even he was surprised when a collector in New York paid so much for it - he 12_ (expect) it to sell for £15,000 to £20,000. However, in the past other very rich people _ (pay) much more for rare books, including Bill Gates - in 1994, he 14_ _ (buy) a collection of scientific notes and drawings by Leonardo da Vinci which ____ (cost) almost \$31 million.

5 Write questions using the prompts. Then answer the questions using the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1 How / writer / hear about Macfarlane's book?

- 2 Why / Macfarlane and Morris / decide / write *The Lost Words*?
- **3** What / Macfarlane and Morris / do / recently?
- What / happen / a family in Wales / clean out their house?
- 5 Why / Chris Albury / surprised?

 (not expect)
- 6 What / some very rich people / do / in the past?

(pay)

(want)

(work on)

(find)

6 Answer the questions so they are true for you.

- 1 What were you doing this time last year?
- 2 What books have you read recently?
- **3** What did you do as soon as you got home yesterday?
- **4** What are your hobbies and how long have you been doing them?
- 5 When did you meet your best friend?

12 Unit 1

1 What can you remember about the Student's Book text? Complete the text with the words below.

calls experience film (x2) mistakes phone photographs record (x2) shot (x2)

Steven Soderbergh	1two movies on
	asn't the first director to make a is way. Tristan Pope had used his
	of people in New York. Hi
movie, Romance in I	VYC, is a ⁴ of a young
couple's day. Jay Alv	arez made a film, which is told as a
series of phone 5	Using a ⁶
means you can 7	anywhere, and you can
set up a 8	quickly. Many people use their
phones to 9	what they are doing and
photograph their ev	eryday lives. Film-makers suggest
we enjoy the 10	, be creative and don't
worry about making	. 11

- **2** Before you read the text, think about the questions below.
 - 1 Do you think colour films are more enjoyable than black and white films? Why? / Why not?
 - 2 What films have you seen that have really great special effects?
- 3 **1.05** Read the text quickly. In which paragraph does the writer discuss ...
 - 1 the change from silent to 'talking' films? ____
 - 2 how early special effects were used? ____
 - 3 special effects and computer technology? ____
 - 4 the first films ever made? ___
 - 5 the introduction of colour in most films? _
 - 6 the development of films without sound? ___

- **4** Are the sentences true (T), false (F) or not given (NG)?
 - 1 Before the 1890s, no one went to the cinema.
 - 2 Film editing was introduced in the 1930s. ___
 - 3 Silent films made film companies less money. ___
 - 4 Shooting films in colour wasn't possible until the 1940s. ____
 - **5** Musicals used more special effects than science fiction. ___
 - **6** Digital technology has led to more superhero films being made. ____

STRATEGY Nouns and verbs with the same form

Some words can be both a noun and a verb with a similar meaning, e.g. *photograph*. To help you understand a text better, it's important to be able to identify when a word is a noun or a verb.

- **5** Read the strategy above. Look at the <u>underlined</u> pairs of words. Which word in each pair is used as a verb and which is used as a noun?
- **6** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words below. There are two words you do not need.

	call experience mistake phone		
		ts were so realistic tha	vie is really memorable. at I the
3	Sheworking.	_ her thoughts on her	phone when she is
4	This director has makers.	been a big	on many film-
5	We're the moment.	a few problems wi	th our broadband at
6	I'm working right	now. I'll give you a	when I've

THE HISTORY OF FILM

A The earliest ¹films appeared in the 1890s. They were short, sometimes less than a minute long. They consisted of a single ²shot and were often a ³record of a public event or a scene from ordinary life. They were in black and white and had no sound, but they allowed people to ⁴experience the magic of the 'movies' for the first time.

B Over the next 30 years, 'silent films' became very popular. In the early 20th century, it became possible to edit film, so different shots could be put together to tell a story. Films increased in length, and by the 1920s, studios in the US were producing over 800 films each year. Comedies starring famous names like Charlie Chaplin and Laurel and Hardy were especially popular, and these would ⁵influence many future comedians.

C It soon became possible to ⁶record actors' voices, and in 1927, the first full-length film with sound was produced. For the first time, actors had to say their lines, and someone had to write the script. Some silent-film actors found it difficult to make the change, but new actors arrived and became big stars. Soon, almost all films were made with sound.

D Although it had been possible to create colour film since the early 1900s, many films were still ⁷shot in black and white until the 1940s. However, as new techniques were developed, more films were made in colour. By the 1950s, colour films were normal, and in the days before television, going to the cinema was a weekly ⁸experience enjoyed by millions of people.

finished.

E At the same time, the industry was experimenting with new techniques to make their films more exciting, including 3D. Film-makers used special effects in science fiction films, but also to ⁹film live action and cartoon characters together, as in the musical Mary Poppins. In the 1970s and 1980s, special effects became more realistic, bringing audiences scary monsters in Jaws, Ghostbusters and Alien.

F In the 21st century, digital technology has had an important ¹⁰influence on special effects in film, allowing film-makers to create characters and scenes that weren't possible in the past. As a result, there has been a big increase in superhero films such as Spider-Man, Avengers and Black Panther. As technology develops, we can only imagine what the future of cinema might bring.





1.7 GLOBAL SKILLS

- 1 What can you remember about the Student's Book lesson? Match the sentence halves to give advice about creative thinking and brainstorming.
 - 1 The more you practise something, _
 - Write your ideas on a piece of paper ____
 - 3 Genius is 1% talent_
 - 4 If you're brainstorming in a group, ___
 - 5 Don't criticise.
 - 6 Try playing with Lego or modelling clay ____
 - 7 The more questions you can ask, ____
 - 8 Quickly write down ten questions you ____
 - A start off on your own.
 - B other people's ideas.
 - C want to find answers to.
 - **D** the better you'll become.
 - E and 99% hard work.
 - F the more ideas you'll have.
 - G and share them.
 - H and see what you can create.
- 2 A film director is answering questions in an online chat. Read the question and her answer. Which advice from Ex 1 does she mention?

Live Chat

Amalia G



Hi Daria,

I really love your films, especially the characters and the crazy plots. I'd love to be a film-maker too, but I worry I'm not creative enough. How do you come up with your ideas?

Amalia

Daria W



Thanks for your question. You're right that it's really important to be creative, but it's hard work. I don't have all the ideas myself - I work with a team and everyone plays a part in the creative process. Sometimes it's difficult to get started, so I get them to play with Lego or modelling clay - we make all kinds of stuff and talk about it. It helps to start the creative process. Being creative is like anything else you have to practise or you won't get better at it. So I ask my team to spend some time each day practising being creative, like drawing pictures, making up an 'alternative' life story or thinking of different ways to solve a simple problem. It really does work. Then, when we have an idea for a story, I get everyone to think of questions to ask about the characters. What do we need to know about them? What has happened to them in the past? Why are they doing what they are doing? We listen to everyone's questions, and we never criticise people's ideas. I want people to feel they can share their ideas, so that together we can come up with a great story.

3 Complete the information about brainstorming with the words below.

criticise lots of ideas on their own

Slide 1 **Brainstorming rules** 1 If you're brainstorming in a group, give people time to think of ideas before sharing them. 2 Aim to come up with at the start - then you have a better chance of finding a really good idea. other people's ideas or they won't feel confident about sharing them.

Brainwriting Quickfire Questions

Round Robin Slide 2 **Brainstorming techniques** : each person quickly writes down ten questions about a person or subject. 5 : each person writes an idea on a piece of paper; these are collected in and then given out again so each person has someone else's paper - each person adds another idea or a comment. go round the table once – each person tells the group one idea; go round the table again - the next person adds another idea or comments on the previous idea (or both!).

- 4 1.06 Listen to a group of film students discussing ideas for a short film project as part of their course. Which of the things on the slides in Ex 3 happen during the discussion?
- 5 1.06 Listen again and choose the correct answer: A or B.
 - 1 Amalia asks the group to spend five minutes ...
 - A brainstorming questions together.
 - B writing down questions individually.
 - 2 Tonya starts by ...
 - A asking two questions.
 - B recording her ideas.
 - 3 Amalia interrupts Otto because ...
 - A he interrupted her.
 - B he criticised someone's idea.
 - 4 Amalia asks the group to develop the story by ...
 - A suggesting as many ideas as possible.
 - B suggesting one idea at a time.
 - 5 Tonya responds to James's idea ...
 - A positively, and adds another idea.
 - B negatively, and criticises his idea.
- 6 MEDIATION Your friend wants to set up a drama improvigroup and needs some ideas on how to get the group going in the first session. Use the information from this lesson to write three pieces of advice for your friend.
- 7 Choose one of the situations below. Brainstorm your ideas about how and why the situation happened. Choose one of the brainstorming techniques from this lesson to use. Then write a short story about the situation.
 - 1 'We were driving past the beach and there was a car in the sea. A family of four people were sitting on the roof.'
 - 2 'We arrived at the party it was very formal and everyone was dressed smartly. But there was one guy wearing a gorilla suit.'

- 1 You are going to read a script of three students who are discussing ideas for a short film about teenage life in their town. Before you read, think about the questions below.
 - 1 What TV or film documentaries have you watched? Did you enjoy them? Why?
 - 2 When you watch a drama, how do you decide whether or not the story is true?
 - 3 Why do film-makers sometimes use drama to tell a true story?
- 2 Read the script and answer the questions.



- Ava ¹As far as I'm concerned, it would be better to make a drama than a documentary. We can choose what information to include and focus on what's most important. And we'll have complete control.

 A
- Sean ²Personally, I much prefer the idea of making a documentary. ³When you think about it, it's more convincing to have real people talking about their lives. Also, a documentary will be easier to film.

 B
- **Beth** ⁴Good point. With a documentary, we won't have to write a script or invent a plot. And we won't need to find actors or look for locations. We can just go into town with a camera and start shooting! ⁵Also, in my experience, people will learn a lot more from a documentary than from a drama.
- Ava c____6l'd take a different view on that. I think you can learn more from a drama because you get involved in the story and care about the characters. Also, because you have a script you can control the message you want to communicate. And if you aren't happy with a shot, you can film it again. You can't do that with a documentary.
- Beth ⁷I'm not sure I agree. You can film again in a documentary. And you can edit the footage, so you do have control. I think both dramas and documentaries can be educational. But ⁸all things considered, I'd prefer to make a documentary for this project. The problem with a drama is people know they're watching something that's fictional.
- **Sean** Yes. ⁹I couldn't agree more. We want people watching our film to know that it's real, not made up.
- Ava E Are you sure that a documentary is real? Beth has just said you can change things by editing them.
- Sean Yes, but it's still real, isn't it? It isn't fiction.
- Ava Well, ¹⁰I'm not sure I agree.

- 1 Why does Ava say a drama is better than a documentary?
- 2 Does Sean agree with Ava? What reason does he give?
- 3 What does Beth think based on personal experience?
- 4 Why does Ava disagree with her?
- 5 What does Beth say is 'the problem with drama'?
- 6 What does Sean say to support Beth?
- 7 Does Ava agree with Sean? What reason does she give?

3 Match the <u>underlined</u> expressions 1–10 to functions A–C.

- A Agreeing and disagreeing ______
- **B** Expressing a preference / an opinion ____ ___
- C Giving a reason / explaining an answer _____

STRATEGY Interacting

In a discussion, it's useful to know how to keep the conversation going and ensure that all participants get the chance to speak. Learning a number of phrases to help you to do this will give you time to think what you want to say next.

- 4 1.07 Read the strategy above. Then listen and match interacting expressions 1–5 to gaps A–E in the script.
 - 1 Hang on a moment. ____
 - 2 Don't you think that's really important? ____
 - 3 What does everyone else think? ____
 - 4 Would you agree with that? ___
 - 5 Can I stop you there? ____

PRONUNCIATION Sentence stress

In English, we usually stress the important words in a sentence such as the main verbs, nouns and adjectives. When we're expressing an opinion about something, we often stress the words that confirm it is ours.

- 5 **1.08** Read the Pronunciation box. <u>Underline</u> the words you think are stressed in the sentences. Then listen and check.
 - 1 Personally, I prefer watching films to reading a book.
 - 2 Good point I'm with you on that.
 - 3 Can I stop you there? I'm not sure I agree.
 - 4 I'd take a different view on that.
 - 5 In my opinion, books help you to learn new words.

6 Plan a similar script to Ex 2.

- 1 Choose one of the topics in the Student's Book, Ex 7 or use your own ideas. For example,
 - 'A movie has to be expensive to be popular.'
 - 'It's important to watch movies in their original language.'
 - · 'Playing video games makes people lazy.'
- 2 Think of different opinions about the topic. Make notes. Decide which phrases for having a discussion and interacting you will use. Try to use at least one phrase for each function.
- **7** Write your script. When you have finished, check that you have ...
 - expressed a range of opinions.
 - used a variety of phrases from this lesson.

1.9 WRITING

- 1 When you read a review of a book, film or game, which of the following might the reviewer include? Which information do you think is most / least important?
 - A their thoughts and feelings
 - B a description of the cover
 - **C** general information, e.g. the publisher
 - D whether they would recommend it
 - E what other people thought about it
 - F details about the plot and characters
- 2 Read a review from Xanthe's book blog. Which of the things in Ex 1 does she include?

BOOK BLOG

- New post today by Xanthe
- A One of the most **original** books I've read recently is *The Old Man and the Sea*, by the US writer Ernest Hemingway. It was first published in 1952 and won the Pulitzer Prize for fiction. It has sold millions of copies worldwide and has been made into a film three times.



B The book is set in Cuba. It tells the moving story of

Santiago, an old fisherman who hasn't caught a fish for many weeks. One day, Santiago goes out on his boat alone and catches a huge marlin. He fights the fish for two days before killing it and tying it to his boat. On the way home, sharks attack the boat. When he arrives, only bones are left, but everyone sees he has caught a great fish.

The main character in the story is Santiago. He is brave and experienced, and very determined. The marlin, which represents the sea, is strong and aggressive, but the old man respects it. At one point, he calls it 'brother'. The respectful relationship between them is the most important part of the book.



- I loved this book. The story is simple, but the writing is beautiful and the book is really entertaining. You learn a lot about courage and strength – it really makes you think. My only criticism is that it is too short!
- All in all, I'd definitely recommend it. Try to read it all in one go – it's more enjoyable that way. You certainly won't regret it.
- 3 Read the review again and number the things in the order Xanthe does them.
 - A gives her opinion about the book ____
 - **B** describes the main characters ____
 - c talks about the book's author and background ____
 - **D** gives her recommendation ____
 - **E** describes the story ____

- **4** Complete the extracts from different reviews with the phrases below. Which points from Ex 1 do they describe?
 - a very enjoyable definitely recommend for everyone has sold main characters makes you think only criticism really loved relationship between set in tells the story of was first released you certainly won't regret it

1	I his film is	Mumbai and	
	a	poor boy from the streets who	
	becomes a millionaire.		
2	This game isn't	, but I'd	

- _____ it my _____ is the cost of some in-game purchases.
- This game ______ in 2011, and it _____ more than 200 million copies.
- 4 The ______ in the film are a father and son, and the _____ them is very moving.
- 5 I _____ this book, not only because it's ____ read, but also because it really _____.
- 6 If you decide to read this book, _____

STRATEGY Using varied vocabulary

When you are writing a review, it is important to use a variety of vocabulary to make your writing more interesting. Use descriptive adjectives to talk about the plot, the characters and how you feel about the book.

- **5** Read the strategy above. Look at the adjectives in **bold** in the text. Which ones describe ...
 - A the book / plot / story?
 - B the characters?
- 6 Which group of adjectives is a reviewer more likely to use to describe a) a book / plot / story and b) the characters?
 - 1 attractive, clever, cold, exciting, friendly, interesting, sensible, strange
 - 2 boring, clever, confusing, difficult, exciting, interesting, strange, surprising
- 7 You are going to write a review of a book, TV show, film or video game. First, make notes about the title, the author / director / creator and any background information.
- 8 Plan your work.
 - Use the information in Ex 3 to organise your ideas into five paragraphs labelled A–E.
 - Decide which useful phrases and descriptive adjectives to use.
- 9 Write your review.
- 10 CHECK YOUR WORK Did you ...
 - follow the paragraph structure?
 - include phrases from this lesson?
 - use a variety of vocabulary?
 - include a recommendation?

16 Unit 1

Grammar

- 1 Choose the correct alternative.
 - 1 Have you read the review of the new Avengers movie? it sounds / is sounding really exciting.
 - 2 My friend recommended this novel, but it's badly written and I don't enjoy / am not enjoying it.
 - 3 A lot of people believe / are believing that acting is a dream job.
 - 4 Are you understanding / Do you understand what it's about? Because I don't!
 - 5 Arun writes / is writing a blog post about his experience as a film extra.
 - 6 I just texted Beata she isn't working / doesn't work at the moment, so she'll come and meet us.

2	Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs
	in brackets.

1	This time last year, we _ exams.	(study) for our final
2		ite) poems and short stories since ites every day after school.
3		(meet) Harry, she ney would always be friends.
4		(take) me to see <i>Avatar</i> tch) many science fiction movies.
5	Katy and Megan (be)	(know) each other since at primary school.
6	While we	(practise) our lines, the director

(decide) to change the script.

Vocabulary

Cl	hoose the correct a	nswer: A, B or C.		
1	When you see the	red light, look into the	e camera and	
	you	r lines.		
	A play	B say	C rehearse	
2	I enjoyed <i>The Matr</i>	ix, but the plot was qu	ite difficult to	
	A follow	B direct	C design	
3	When a book is ma writes the	ade into a film, someo 	ne new usually	
	A lines	B part	C script	
4		Matias used to work in fashion, but now he designs for historical dramas.		
	A special effects	B locations	C costumes	
5	Can we rehearse o	urone	more time befor	
	filming starts tome	orrow?		
	A script	B lines	C part	
6	New Zealand was as the location for the Lord of the Rings films.			
		B designed	C followed	
7 Seven actors have the part of Jame since the first film, Dr No, in 1964.				
		B followed	C played	
8		e director used		
	A live action	B special effects	C studios	

4		omplete the sentences. The first letter of each word has een given.
		I don't really enjoy reading novels – I prefer to spend time reading n
	2	The film <i>Gone Girl</i> is based on a really exciting m novel. It keeps you guessing about what happened until the end.
	3	My brother sings, plays the guitar and writes his own material – he's a really good s
	4	Writing p is a good way to express and understand your emotions, but it doesn't always have to rhyme.
	5	A p edits, produces and sells books.
	6	Many Disney movies are based on old f, like Sleeping Beauty or Cinderella.
	7	Karim is a b – he posts stories about his lift online, and he has over 10,000 followers.
	8	Emma by Jane Austen is an early example of a

Cumulative review

r_____novel.

- 5 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Use between two and five words including the word in bold.
 - 1 An actor's job is to pretend to be someone else in a film or play. part An actor's job is to __ of someone else in a film or play.
 - 2 We've decided where we are going to shoot our film.

location

We've __ for our film.

- 3 Before filming started, the actors practised what they had to say together. lines Before filming started, the actors __ together.
- 4 I loved watching the action on stage as well as listening to the music. happening I loved watching what_

on stage as well as listening to the music.

5 Do you think it's true that her book sold a million copies? believe

that her book sold a million copies?

6 The first special effects were used in 1895. using Film-makers ___ since 1895.

7 Many writers note down their thoughts, ideas and feelings every day. **keep**

Many writers_ of their thoughts, ideas and feelings every day.

REFLECT Think about the following questions.

- 1 Which lesson in this unit did you enjoy the most? Why?
- 2 Which of the grammar points did you find most difficult?
- 3 What can you do to expand your vocabulary?
- 4 What techniques do you think are the most useful for helping creativity and brainstorming?

2.1 VOCABULARY



Back to nature





1 a What can you remember about the vlog? Complete the summaries with the words below.

grassland peaceful scenery stream stretching surrounded valley woodland
Alicia talked about the gorgeous ¹ in Bali; she especially wanted to visit the mountains, which in some photos are ² by ³ lakes. James saw a photo of a ⁴ in the mountains,
5 into the distance. He wanted to take photos of the 6 covered with flowers, but in the end went to a 7 area by a beautiful mountain 8
admired cave coast edge of the cliffs seaside views waterfall
Becky described visiting Vietnam to photograph a famous 9
the south 12 of Italy. He described the breathtaking 13 , especially the colourful houses on the 14 called the Emerald Grotto.

- **b 2.01** Watch or listen again and check.
- 2 Match the sentence halves.
 - 1 From the CN Tower there's a breathtaking ____
 - 2 We went swimming in a peaceful_
 - 3 Many European cities have woodland ____
 - 4 Let's sit down and admire ___
 - 5 The city of Rome is surrounded ___
 - 6 Never drink from a mountain ____
 - 7 Some of the most gorgeous ____
 - 8 Don't stand too close to the edge of the ___
 - A the landscape around us.
 - B areas for people to relax in.
 - **C** stream unless you know the water is clean.
 - D lake with warm, clear water.
 - **E scenery** in Europe is in the Tatras.
 - **F view** of the city of Toronto.
 - **G** by seven hills.
 - H cliff it's dangerous!

- 3 Choose the correct alternative.
 - 1 The pampas in Argentina is an area of mostly **grassland / woodland** with very few trees.
 - 2 At 8,300 km², Titicaca is the largest lake / waterfall in South America.
 - 3 The Blue Grotto is a **cave** / **valley** on the island of Capri that you can only reach by boat.
 - 4 Nepal has many high mountains with deep landscapes / valleys in between them.
 - 5 Recife is a city on the north-east **coast** / **seaside** of Brazil.
 - 6 The Sahara Desert in North Africa stretches / surrounds from the Red Sea in the east to the Atlantic Ocean in the west.
 - 7 The Black Forest is Germany's largest and most beautiful **woodland** / **scenery**, so beautiful in fact that they named a cake after it.
 - 8 Iceland is home to one of the world's largest puffin colonies. Puffins love to build their nests in the rocky waterfalls / cliffs, such as Látrabjarg in the west.
- 4 **REAL** ENGLISH Complete the dialogue with the phrases below.

bucket list	dead tired	don't see	the point
fine by me	it's as simpl	e as that	miss out on

- A I don't think the weather is going to improve. To be honest, I ______ in walking any further. Shall we go down?
- B It's a shame to ²______ seeing those amazing views. And this mountain has been on my ³_____ for ages.
- A I know, but if the rain continues, we won't see anything, 4______.
- B I suppose you're right ... OK, that's

 5

 And actually, I'm 6

 walking.
- 5 Think about an area of your country which is popular with tourists. Write five pieces of advice for someone who is planning to visit it for the first time.

If you want to miss out on the crowds, there's no point in going at the weekend. You should visit in the early morning or late afternoon on a weekday.

VOCABULARY BOOSTER Now practise **Landscapes** vocabulary on page 105.

18 Unit 2

	2.02 Listen to dialogues 1–7. Which dialogue is A a prediction based on what someone thinks? B a decision made at the time of speaking? C an offer?	 Write sentences using the correct future form and the words in brackets. Then match them to A–G in Ex 1. Emma isn't answering her phone. (I / send / a WhatsApp message.)
	D a future plan or intention?	2 We don't need to hurry. (The train / not leave / for 20 minutes.)
	 E a prediction based on what someone sees? F a scheduled or timetabled future event? G a future arrangement? 	3 Look at the queue! (It / take / hours / get / our tickets.)
2	② 2.02 Complete the dialogues with the correct	4 Tariq has trained really hard. (I / certain / he / do well / in the race.
	future forms. Then listen again and check.1 A Look at all people! I didn't think it would be this busy.	5 I really enjoy geography. (After / I / leave / school / I / study / it / at university.)
	B I know. It be hard to find Ed in this crowd.2 A OK, so what's the plan for this evening?	6 Zara can't come to training this evening. (She / meet / friends / revise for / a test.)
	B Ben and Daisy round for pizza. Then we're all bowling.3 A Do you think Samira can pass her driving test?	7 I'm glad you enjoyed the cake I made. (I / send / the recipe / if you like.)
	 B She's had a lot of lessons, so I think she probably pass this time. 4 A I'm nearly ready. What time is it? 	8 I'm busy working at the moment. (As soon as / I / finish / I / call you back.)
	B It's 6.45 p.m. Hurry up – the concert at 7.30.	5 Complete the blog post with the correct future form of the verbs in brackets.
	 A Where are you? B In that Italian café opposite the station. A OK. As soon as my train	Latest blog post +
	I come and find you. 6 A I need to revise for my maths test tomorrow. B Paola and I help you when we supper.	Hi everyone, As you know, I ¹ (travel) to Nepal next week to join a volunteer programme which helps to protect local wildlife. My flight ² (leave) on Friday evening and it ³ (not arrive) in Nepal until
	7 A What will you do after you school? B Well, I take a year off	7.00 a.m. the next morning. According to my information, we 4 (travel) to our village by truck. The journey 5 (take) about seven hours. The roads
3	and travel. Correct the mistake in each sentence.	are quite rough, so I don't think it ⁶ (be) very comfortable, but I'm sure I ⁷ (find) it
	I'll meet you at the skatepark once I'm doing my homework.	interesting. I don't know exactly what they want me to do yet – I guess they ⁸
	By the time we will arrive home, it will be dark.	in this blog and I hope you all read it. Message me and I (respond) – I promise. Oh, Jim has just texted me to say that I must post lots of photos of the mountains.
	They won't arrive in time unless they have hurried.	OK, Jim, I ¹³ (post) some photos just for you! Take care everyone. See you at Christmas. Aaron
	4 When Anya has completed her course, she is	Comment
	looking for a job.	Write a sentence about each of the following.your plans for the next school holidays
	5 As soon as Ollie will finish his workout, he'll meet us for a coffee.	2 some arrangements you have made for the next few weeks
		what you intend to do when you have finished school
	6 I'll just try these shoes on before I have bought them.	4 something you predict will happen before you are 30

2.3 LISTENING

1 What can you remember about living in the wild from the Student's Book?

STRATEGY Anticipating likely language from the topic

Before you listen to a radio programme or a podcast, take a moment to look at its topic or title and think what words or phrases you might hear. This will help you to listen more effectively because you'll know what language you may expect to hear.

2 Read the strategy above. You are going to listen to a podcast where two people talk about what they will do when they have finished school. Before you listen, look at the photos and posts. Which words and phrases below could you use to describe each photo?

admire the landscape breathtaking views
collect wood hiking make a fire mountain streams
outdoor skills remote community
surrounded by nature valley

Photogram





000

This is where I'll be in a month's time. Really looking forward to it!



Laura



000

The gorgeous scenery of California! Can't wait for next week.

- 3 ② 2.03 Listen to Laura and Josh talking about their plans and check your ideas in Ex 2.
- 4 ② 2.04 Listen to Laura again and choose the correct answer: A, B or C.
 - 1 Laura and her friends are planning to hike for ...
 - A less than two weeks.
 - B around a month.
 - C about six months.
 - 2 They will carry everything they need ...
 - A except food and water.
 - B apart from water.
 - c including food and water.
 - 3 Laura says the weather is usually ...
 - A fine, but it can change.
 - B cold, and sometimes snows.
 - C hot, which can be dangerous.
- **5** ② **2.05** Listen to Josh again. Are the sentences true (*T*), false (*F*) or not given (*NG*)?
 - 1 Josh is staying with a small community in a remote town
 - 2 The community lives close to nature and respects the environment. ____
 - **3** There's no electricity, but there is a river to get water from.
 - **4** Josh will learn Finnish as well as outdoor skills such as hunting and fishing. ____
 - 5 Josh imagines that when the weather changes life will be easier. ____
 - 6 The hardest thing for Josh is going to be not communicating with relatives back home.
- **PRONUNCIATION** Read the sentences below. Cross (X) the sentences where the pair of words in **bold** are NOT homophones.
 - 1 If you stand over here, you can hear the river.
 - 2 Have you **seen** the movie *Wild*? The final **scene** is very emotional.
 - 3 Josh hated going into town to **buy** food as he was surrounded **by** people.
 - 4 My parents want to buy a house on the **coast**, but beach houses **cost** a lot of money.
 - 5 Omar threw a rock and it went through someone's window.
 - 6 She's the only **one** in her family who has ever **won** a place at university.
 - 7 Josh made a table from a wooden **board** he's always busy and never **bored**.
 - 8 Darshna hates walking in the mountains because she's afraid of heights.
- 7 MEDIATION A friend is going hiking and wild camping for the first time. Write three pieces of advice about the survival skills they will need, using the information in the listening. Think about ...
 - · protection from the weather.
 - essential equipment they will need.
 - natural resources, like water and firewood.



1 Match 1-10 to A-J to make collocations.

1	wind	Α	emissions
2	natural	В	panels
3	renewable	C	station
4	climate	D	problems
5	solar	E	change
6	greenhouse gas	F	turbines
7	recycle	G	resources
8	power	Н	warming
9	global	I	energy
10	environmental	J	waste

2 Complete the sentences with collocations from Ex 1.

1	Gas, oil, water and wood are all			
2	A is a machine that turns the			
	movement of the air into energy.			
3	A place that makes electricity is a			
4	Changes in the Earth's weather, for example, wind and rain, is called			
5	include the release of CO ₂ , CH ₄ and			
	NO into the atmosphere.			
6	catch the heat of the sun and turn it			
	into electricity.			
7	Power created from the sun, water or wind is called			
8	Deforestation and pollution are two examples of			
9	is an increase in the Earth's			
	temperature caused by polluting gases.			
10	If you, you use glass, paper and plastic again instead of throwing them away.			

3 Choose the correct alternative.

- 1 Nuclear / Solar / Wind energy comes from the energy contained in atoms.
- 2 Deforestation in the Amazon is an example of humans destroying environmental problems / natural resources / renewable energy.
- 3 My presentation is about **climate / solar / wind** change and environmental problems.
- 4 Some countries are developing **global / renewable / sustainable** tourism to protect local resources.
- 5 Reducing air travel could harm / have an impact on / pollute greenhouse gas emissions.
- 6 Some breathing problems are caused by traffic **polluting / recycling / warming** the air.

	omplete the quotes with the phrases below. There is one hrase you do not need.
1	environmental problem global warming greenhouse gas emissions natural resources polluting the atmosphere recycling waste solar panels sustainable tourism wind turbines
1	' is definitely happening. Summers are hotter and there's less snow in winter.'
2	'Our town is great at A lorry collects our cardboard, plastic and glass every week.'
3	'Carbon dioxide (CO ₂) and other are a big part of climate change.'
4	'We get many hours of sun throughout the year, so we use to produce a lot of our electricity.'
5	'Our country has a lot of importantlike coal, oil and natural gas.'
6	'It's really important to stop vehicles in cities. They cause so many health problems.'
7	'For me, the biggest is climate change. It's the single most important issue facing the planet.'
8	'Uruguay is known for its industry – we try to ensure that visitors have little impact on the natural environment.'
5 Co	omplete the leaflet with words and phrases from the lesson.
ľ	There are many ¹ for us to be concerned about, and so many things about our lifestyles that ² the planet. There are 1.4 billion cars on the planet, all ³

ar	nere are many ¹ nd so many things about our l e planet.	for us to be concerned about, lifestyles that ²
th 4 m		our electricity is generated by al or gas. These actions – and
Ui yc	nless we act now, it will be to ou can do that will ⁶	o late. Here are some things on climate change.
0	Planting trees will reduce the countries like Brazil and Nig	
2	Reduce your personal ⁸ cycle instead of driving.	emissions – walk or
3	Think about what ⁹ things like water.	you are using, even
4	Use 10 energ	gy instead of oil and gas.
5		lifestyle – buy fewer
6	Don't throw things away – ¹ everyone can do.	is something

	omplete the sentences with I'm most concerned about	
2	I'm also worried about	because
3	I think	_ is / are important because
4	I'm not concerned about _	because

7 **VOCABULARY BOOSTER** Now practise **The environment** vocabulary on page 105.

1 Choose the correct	a	Iternative.
----------------------	---	-------------

- 1 We're going on holiday this time next week we will be enjoying / have enjoyed ourselves at the seaside.
- 2 By the time I'm 30, most of the world's forests will be disappearing / have disappeared.
- 3 Our team has an important game next Saturday, so we will be training / have trained every evening this week.
- 4 Recycling in our town is improving all the time, so in the future we won't be throwing / have thrown away so much waste.
- 5 Renewable energy is important because the world's oil will be running / have run out by the end of this century.
- 6 I'm still working on my science project I won't be finishing / have finished it by tomorrow.
- 7 Electric cars are unusual now, but in a few years' time, we will all **be driving** / **have driven** them.
- 8 By the year 2100, I hope we will be reducing / have reduced the effects of climate change.
- 9 In ten years' time, we will be generating / have generated more electricity from renewable energy than from coal and gas.
- 2 Which sentences in Ex 1 are talking about ...
 - A an action which will be in progress at a specific time in the future?
 - B an action which will be completed before a certain moment in the future?
- 3 Write sentences using the future perfect or future continuous.
 - 1 At 10.00 a.m. tomorrow, / Mia / travel / to Oxford / for an interview.
 - 2 In the future, / we / recycle / more of our waste.
 - 3 Enzo / qualify / as a doctor / by / this time next year.
 - 4 By 2050, / many more animal species / disappear.
 - 5 In the next few weeks, / I / study / for my exams.
 - 6 By 2030, / we / install / solar panels / on all public buildings.
 - 7 In a year's time, / I / hope / I / study / at university.
 - 8 By this time tomorrow, / I / finish / my presentation on environmental problems.
 - Fifty years from now, / we / live / a more sustainable lifestyle.
 - 10 Not long from now, / people / travel / in self-driving cars.

4 **② 2.06** Read what four young people said about how climate change affects them and their countries. Complete the text with the correct future form of the verbs in brackets. Then listen and check.

Isabella

In Madrid, there are so many cars polluting the air. All my friends are worried about it. This weekend, we 1 (hold) a protest to try and stop cars entering the city. I hope by the end of the protest we 2_ _ (convince) some people not to use their cars.

Angelo

Climate change is causing terrible forest fires in the south-west USA. There were days this summer when I couldn't go to school because of the air pollution. If the situation doesn't change, more kids like me 3_ (miss) school regularly. Also, we 4_ ___ (lose) a lot of forest.

Julia

Kenya has lost nearly half of its forests, so deforestation is a serious problem. We have set up a tree-planting project, and over the next few years, we 5_ (plant) thousands of new trees. By 2030, I hope we _ (replace) many of the trees.

Jan

One third of the Netherlands is already below sea level. Due to climate change, sea levels are rising, and we are getting more frequent heavy storms. In the future, more and more people (live) with the risk of flooding. In the long term, it's possible that the sea 8_ _ (flood) many towns and cities.

5 Use the infographic to write sentences about the future. Use the future perfect and the future continuous.

NEGATIVE **PREDICTIONS**

3 % of people living in cities: 2018 = 55%, 2050 = 68%



1 2015–2030: sea levels approximately 11 cm higher.

4 2020-2100: 50% of all species become extinct



2 2050: global temperatures + 2°C warmer



5 2100: world population = 11.2 billion



- 1 4
- 6 Write affirmative sentences with the ideas below and appropriate time phrases.

buy electric cars choose to eat less meat recycle more waste reduce our use of natural resources use more renewable energy

1 What can you remember about the Student's Book text? Complete the sentences with the words below.

colonies filter greenhouses
mineral orbit spread

1 Jeff Bezos believes space ______ will soon
______ the Earth, solving the problem of overpopulation.

2 One company plans to build a ______ which removes
CO₂ from the atmosphere; food producers will use the CO₂ in
their _____.

3 Another company plans to use a _____ called
olivine – they will ______ it on beaches to absorb CO₂.

STRATEGY Using visuals

Before you read a text, look at the accompanying photos and illustrations. They can help you to find out what the text is going to be about.

- 2 Read the strategy above. Look at the title of the article, the photos and other information. What information would you expect the article to include?
 - 1 the environmental problems of meat production
 - 2 the benefits of eating meat
 - 3 changing to a more sustainable diet
 - 4 how to feed the world's population in the future
 - 5 alternatives to eating meat
 - 6 how to farm insects
- 3 (3) 2.07 Read the text and check your ideas in Ex 2.

4 Complete the summary in your own words, using information from the article.

Two environmental proble	ms caused by meat
production are ¹	It's
important to find an altern	ative to current methods
of meat production in the f	uture, because by 2050 the
population ²	A Swedish–British
study suggests that we cou	
by eating ³	Some solutions
include 'growing' meat in a	laboratory, which will
create ⁴	, and making 'meat'
	chef in Wales has a different
suggestion: we should ⁵	This
	se because producing insects
for food uses 6	and produces
7	Around 2.5 billion people
around the world 8	In the West,
9	may be more likely to try
insects as food.	

5 Complete the sentences so they are true for you.

1 leat / don't eat meat because _

- I would / wouldn't consider not eating meat to save the planet because ______
- 3 I would / wouldn't like to eat insects because
- 4 What I eat may change in the future because

A taste of the **FUTURE**



According to a United Nations report, farming animals for meat, eggs and dairy products such as milk and cheese adds to a number of environmental problems. It is responsible for 14.5% of greenhouse gas emissions – which is more than the total emissions caused by all types of transport, including air travel. Around 70% of all farmland is used for raising animals. Clearing trees to grow food for animals causes deforestation. It's clear that meat production is bad for the environment, and unless something changes, the situation will only get worse. At the same time, scientists predict that the global population will have reached 10 billion by 2050. To feed so many people, we are going to need 70% more land and 120% more water.

How can we make the way we produce and eat food more sustainable, and at the same time continue to feed a growing population? A recent Swedish-British study suggests that eating half the current quantity of meat will reduce greenhouse gas emissions by about 30% by 2050. Eating a plant-based diet with no meat could reduce emissions by 50%.

Meanwhile, scientists are exploring more unusual solutions. One example is meat 'grown' in a laboratory, made from animal cells. Because this doesn't involve live animals, scientists believe it would generate up to 96% fewer greenhouse gas emissions than actual meat production. Another solution is 'meat' made from vegetable material, such as the Impossible Burger, which many people think looks and tastes exactly like real meat.

A restaurant in Wales has a different solution. They serve food, including burgers, cheese and biscuits, all made from insects. And the chef, Andy Holcroft, hopes we will all be eating more insects in the future. It makes sense for the environment. The same amount of land needed to produce a 200g steak can produce 2kg of edible insects.

And that steak creates the same amount of greenhouse gases as 20kg of edible insects. In Asia, Africa and Central America, up to 2.5 billion people already eat insects, although in Europe and the US it's much less usual. However, research shows that younger people are more willing to try new foods, especially those that have environmental concerns. Will enough people develop a taste for insects to make a difference in the future? Only time will tell.



2.7 GLOBAL SKILLS

your___

1 Complete the questions about dealing with a moral dilemma with the words below.

consequences duty face perspective principles

What different options do you have? Are any against

2 Ask someone for advice – you shouldn't have to _____ the problem alone.

3 Is it possible to approach the dilemma from a different _____?

4 Think about the ______ of different actions – what do you think will happen in each case?

5 Are there any moral rules that apply in this situation? Do you feel you have a ______ to do the right thing?

2 Read the post on an online forum asking for advice. Answer the questions below.

- 1 What is going to happen in Anna99's town?
- 2 Why is this a good thing?
- 3 What does the report say?
- 4 What is the problem?
- 5 What is Anna99's dilemma?
- 6 What would you advise Anna99 to do?

■ ADVICE FORUM



Anna99

24 Sept

I live in a small town. There aren't many jobs and lots of young people are unemployed. The local council plans to build a new road past the town. Building the road will create many new jobs and attract businesses to the area. It could stop people moving away and save the town's future.

I work part-time at the council office, doing photocopying and general office work. I have seen a report on the environmental impact of the new road. It suggests that building the road will have serious consequences for the environment. It will involve the deforestation of local woodland areas, harm grassland where many animals and birds live, and pollute the air.

The problem is the town council have decided to keep the report secret. They think it's more important to go ahead with the road. I think this is wrong, and I want to tell someone. However, many people in the town need jobs, including my friends and family. If the road isn't built, the town may die. What should I do?

Reply

3 ② 2.08 Listen to three people discussing the post and the advice they would give. Match each speaker to one of the questions below from the Student's Book.

- A 'What would be the positive and negative consequences of my choice?' ____
- **B** 'What are the moral rules that apply in this situation?'
- C 'How would a good person behave in a similar situation?' ____

4 The three friends worked together to write a reply to Anna99. Match the <u>underlined</u> phrases with the phrases below.

a different perspective ____ against your own principles ____ positive and negative consequences ____ problem to face ____ your duty ____

problem to face your duty
■ ADVICE FORUM
Replies —
3friends 24 Sept
Reply to Anna99
This must be a very difficult ¹ situation to deal with. Basically, you have two options: to tell someone or to say nothing.
So, firstly, you need to think about the ² good and bad effects of both options. Which is more important, protecting the environment or helping the town?
Secondly, what do you believe is the right thing to do in this situation? If you act ³ in a way that doesn't fit with your own moral beliefs, you will always feel guilty about it.
Finally, why not talk to someone you trust who can see your dilemma from ⁴ another point of view?
We hope these ideas are useful and that they help you to do ⁵ what you know is right. Good luck!

5 Choose one of the dilemmas below and note down possible answers to the three key questions in Ex 3.

ASKING FOR ADVICE





Carl G This morning, I found 50 euros in a street near the school. My sister is saving for a violin, so I texted her and said I would give her half the money. I didn't tell anyone else. Later, one of the teachers told our class that another student had lost some money outside the school gates this morning. Should I say anything?

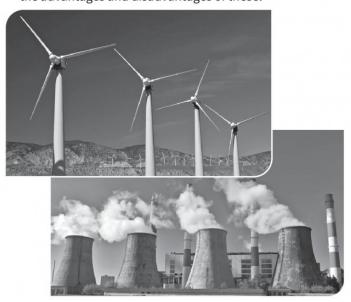


VickiBlue Yesterday, I was playing online video games at my friend's house. Today, my friend told me he had bought extra in-game features with his father's credit card. My friend told his father it was my idea. My friend says if I give his father the money, he will pay me back. Should I tell his father the truth?

6 Write a reply to the person in the dilemma you chose in Ex 5. Use the phrases below to help you.

- Basically, you have two options ...
- So firstly, I advise you to ...
- Which is more important: ... or ...?
- What do you believe is the right thing to do in this situation?
- Finally, why not ...?
- If you ..., it could help you ...

1 Look at the photos. What types of energy do they show? What other examples can you think of? What are some of the advantages and disadvantages of these?



- 2 **Q 2.09** Look at the topic for a student debate in Ex 6. Listen to one speaker's opening statement. Is she for or against the topic?
- 3 ② 2.09 Complete the extracts from the statement with the words and phrases below. Then listen again and check.

absolutely both and moreover not only but also such as
believe that we need to switch to 100% renewable energy as soon as possible Most experts agree that world supplies of 2 oil gas will have run out in about 50 years' time. 3, they will become more expensive to produce Renewable sources of energy, 4 solar and wind power, are 5 free, unlimited
as well as clearly obviously what's more without any doubt
There's ⁶ a strong environmental argument for switching from fossil fuels They are the main reason for the increase in global warming, ⁷ causing high levels of pollution. Unless we act in the next few years, temperatures will, ⁸ , keep rising ⁹ , it's cleaner and doesn't pollute the air we breathe, so ¹⁰ it's better for our health.
also for example furthermore in fact like
There are real economic benefits too. 11, once we have put the technology in place to generate electricity from sources 12 solar and wind power, renewable energy prices won't go up and down like the price of oil. 13, they will be more stable. 14, increased investment in renewables will lead to more jobs in the green energy business and will
bring lower prices for customers.

4 Match the words and phrases in Ex 3 to A–D.

- A Presenting similar ideas
- C Emphasising your point
- **B** Introducing more ideas
- **D** Giving an example

STRATEGY Using linking words

When you're presenting your arguments for a debate, it's important to make clear connections between them. Linking words such as *not only ... but also*, ... *despite*, *however* will help you to organise ideas and sentences within your speech.

5 Read the strategy above. Then choose the correct alternative.

Dialogue 1

- A I ¹definitely / similarly think we will be flying less in future. I predict that air travel will be ²both / as well less popular and more expensive.
- B I agree. ³Furthermore / Such as, I think that will make people change their behaviour ⁴clearly / for instance, taking fewer foreign holidays.

Dialogue 2

- A I've got solar panels on my roof ⁵as well as / not only a wind turbine in the garden. And ⁶equally / what's more, I recycle all my waste.
- B That's ⁷moreover / absolutely brilliant! You're ⁸obviously / in fact determined to fight climate change.

Dialogue 3

- A Sonia has stopped eating ⁹not only / such as meat, but also fish and dairy foods, ¹⁰like / in fact milk, eggs and cheese. And she's stopped buying animal products, ¹¹additionally / such as leather shoes.
- **B** I know. She's ¹²both / equally serious about not driving, and walks everywhere!

Dialogue 4

- A There are lots of reasons to recycle waste.

 ¹³Definitely / For example, it reduces our use of natural resources. ¹⁴In fact / Like, some materials can be recycled more than once.
- B That's right. ¹⁵As well as / Additionally, some companies use recycled materials to make new products. That's ¹⁶clearly / what's more a good thing for the environment!
- **6** You are going to write an opening statement disagreeing with the debate statement. Plan your work.
 - Make notes about at least two arguments you want to make. Use the notes below to help you.
 - Decide which linking words you will use to organise your ideas.



We should switch to 100% renewable energy as soon as possible

Arguments against switching to 100% renewable energy

- can't generate enough energy for our current needs
- still causes pollution and greenhouse gases
- can be unreliable depend on sun, wind, etc. to work more expensive to make and operate
- **7** Write your statement. When you have finished, check that you have ...
 - included two or more arguments.
 - included linking words and phrases from this lesson.

2.9 WRITING

- 1 Look at the statement in the essay title. Do you agree? Which of the points below support the essay title? Which contain arguments against it?
 - A Recycling reduces air pollution and the amount of plastic in the oceans.
 - **B** People want to feel they are playing a part in helping to save the planet.
 - C The biggest problem is waste and pollution created by industry.
 - D Recycling helps companies to use less energy and create fewer greenhouse gas emissions.
 - E Not enough people recycle their waste to make a difference.
 - **F** If materials are recycled, companies don't need to use so many natural resources.
 - **G** Recycling can be expensive and causes pollution.
- 2 Read the essay quickly. Which arguments in Ex 1 were included?

'Recycling household waste won't save the planet.' Do you agree?

- A 1It goes without saying that our planet faces many serious environmental problems. Obviously, there isn't just one solution, but everyone has a role to play in helping to reduce the impact of human activity on the environment. 2From my point of view, although recycling alone may not save the planet, it can make a difference.
- B ³First of all, ⁴it seems obvious to me that anything that reduces energy use is worth doing. Recycling materials means we will use less energy in making new products made from plastic, metal or glass. This reduces the amount of greenhouse gas emissions, which helps to slow down global warming.
- 5<u>Secondly</u>, 6<u>In my opinion</u> recycling can reduce pollution.

 Burning waste causes dangerous gases that pollute the atmosphere, and throwing it away leads to millions of tonnes of plastic entering the ocean each year. 7<u>Furthermore</u>, when we recycle waste materials, big companies need to use fewer natural resources to make their products.
- Blaving said that, the impact of individuals recycling their paper and plastic is actually quite small. Therefore, it is really important that governments take stronger action against pollution and waste.
- ⁹All in all, ¹⁰I believe that recycling household waste plays an important part in reducing global warming and pollution. ¹¹However, we won't be able to save the planet unless governments also do more.

3 Complete the essay plan with notes 1–5.

- Present your main argument.
- 2 Sum up the arguments and repeat your opinion.
- 3 Present opposing argument(s).
- 4 Present the general situation and your opinion.
- 5 Present further arguments.

Paragraph A		
Paragraph B		
Paragraph C		
Paragraph D		
Paragraph E		

4	Match the <u>underlined</u> words and phrases 1–11 in the	ıe
	essay to functions A–E.	

Α	giving an opinion
В	presenting a general situation
C	presenting an argument
D	introducing a contrasting argument
E	summing up

- 5 Look at the words and phrases below. Which underlined words and phrases 1–11 in the essay could they replace?
 - they replace?

 A in my view ____

 B to sum up ____

 C I'm certain that ____

 D additionally ____

 E firstly ____
 - F moreover ____ G on the other hand ____
 - **H** it's generally seen that ____
 - I I'm convinced that ____
 - J on the whole ___

STRATEGY Brainstorming for writing

Before you start writing an opinion essay, analyse the topic and make a long list of arguments you could discuss. Then, choose three to five arguments which you will include in your essay.

- 6 Read the strategy above. You are going to write an opinion essay. Choose one of the topics from the Student's Book or one from below. Brainstorm at least four different arguments connected with it.
 - Deforestation is a price worth paying to feed people.
 - Driving cars and lorries in cities should be banned.
 - People should be paid to recycle their waste.
- 7 Plan your essay and decide what you will write in each paragraph. Use the essay plan in Ex 3 and your notes from Ex 6 to help you. Think about ...
 - 1 what information you will give in the introduction, and your opinion on the topic.
 - 2 your first argument supporting your opinion.
 - 3 another argument supporting your opinion.
 - 4 an opposing argument.
 - 5 what you will say in the conclusion.
 - 6 which vocabulary and words / phrases from the Phrasebook you will use.
- 8 Write your essay.

9 CHECK YOUR WORK Did you ...

- follow the plan: introduction, supporting arguments, opposing argument(s) and summing up?
- include relevant vocabulary and phrases?
- check your spelling, grammar and punctuation?

26 Unit 2

Grammar

_		aı			
L	Cł	noose the correct ar	ารง	ver: A, B or C.	
	1	Look at this weathe	er!	We	very wet unless it
		stops raining soon.			
		A get	В	are going to get	C are getting
	2	Jess and Talia plan	to	go travelling as	soon as they
		their			
		A are finishing	В	have finished	C will finish
	3	I can't speak to you	ıriş	ght now, but I	you
		back when I get ho			
		A call	В	'm going to call	C 'll call
	4	Unless she gets god university.			
		A won't be able to	В	isn't able to	C isn't being able to
	5	You need to hurry is last bus			ome tonight – the
		A leaves	В	is leaving	C is going to leave
	6	I haven't had my ex	an	n results vet, but	Lwill text you as
		soon as I			
		A am hearing			C hear
	7	Alyssa wants to go	to	college next yea	r – she
		her e			
		A takes	В	is taking	C will take
2	C	omplete the senten	CAS	with the future	continuous or
-		ture perfect form of			
		Unless we act now,			
		(destroy) the Amazo			
	2	At 7.00 a.m. tomorr	OW	morning, Liam	will
				(collect) rubbish	
	3	Scientists predict t	ha	t by 2070, global	temperatures will
	4	By the time I'm 25,	Ih	ope I'll	(earn)
		lots of money!			
	5	In a few years' time			
	6	In the future, strong			
		gas emissions worl			t on greenhouse
		gas emissions word	uw	nue.	
/	oc	abulary			
2	CŁ	noose the correct al	tei	rnative	
		It's hard work climb			en you reach the
	_	top, the views are b			
	2				
	_	landscaped by ope			
		There's some gorge			·
	3	THERE S SOTTIE MOLDE	01	IS scenery / coa	st in the north of

- - 4 I always sit next to the train window so I can admire / locate the landscape.
 - 5 Marie spends summer holidays at the **stream** / **coast**, lying on the beach.
 - 6 The river runs through a **valley** / **waterfall** between two mountains.
 - 7 That house at the edge of the **cliff / seaside** must have amazing sea views.

4 Match the senten	ce ha	ves.
--------------------	-------	------

- 1 Reliable sources of renewable. 2 Some people believe that climate.
- 3 The best place for wind ____
- 4 Many environmental ____
- 5 Increasing greenhouse __
- 6 We can all help the planet by recycling.
- 7 We create our own electricity from solar ____
- 8 Much of Africa is rich in natural_
- A waste, such as glass and plastic.
- B change doesn't exist.
- C resources like oil and metal.
- **D** problems are caused by human activity.
- **E energy** include the sun and the wind.
- F turbines is on or near the coast.
- **G** panels on the roof
- H gas emissions is a major problem.

Cumulative review

5 Choose the correct answer: A, B or C.

1_		thousar	nds	of trees over the	ne	ext three years.
This is to fight the effects of ² in other parts of the world. But it's also to slow down ³ by						
of the world. But it's also to slow down 3 by						
re	removing as much CO_2 from the atmosphere as possible.					
Pe	eop	le all over the UK 4	_	in lo	cal	groups. They
ar	e c	reating new ⁵		areas near	th	eir village
		wn. Not only will th				
cli	ma	ate, but it will also i	mp	prove the landsca	ре	. Imagine how
ar	naz	zing the scenery 7		when	all	the trees have
gr	OW	zing the scenery ⁷ _ n. Obviously, we w ope that in three y . We are helping to	on	't ⁸	all	the time – but
W	e h	ope that in three y	ear	's we ⁹		_ a million
tre	ees	. We are helping to	cr	eate a more ¹⁰		
fu	tur	e for the planet.				
1	Α	plant	В	are planting	С	are going to plant
2	Α	deforestation	В	power stations	C	tourism
3	Α	power stations	В	recycling waste	С	global warming
4	Α	will have worked	В	will be working	C	work
5	Α	grassland		woodland		landscape
		impact				
		is looking				
		working				have worked
		will have planted				are going to
,	^	viii nave planted	_	will be planting		plant
10	Α	recycling	В	climate	C	sustainable

Tomorrow I start work on a new volunteering project. We

REFLECT Think about the following questions.

- 1 Which lesson in this unit did you enjoy the most? Why?
- 2 Which of the grammar points did you find most difficult?
- 3 What can you do to practice using linking words?
- 4 What things did you find difficult and easy when you wrote your opinion essay?

Listening

EXAM STRATEGY

When you do a multiple-choice listening task, think of different ways the speakers might express the information in the options. They will often paraphrase it, so listen for the main ideas, not the exact words from the options.

- 1 Read the strategy above. Then read the questions and options in the exam task in Ex 2. Think of other ways that the speaker might express the same ideas.
- 2 **② 2.10** For each question 1–6, listen and choose the correct answer: A, B, C or D.



You will hear a scientist called Ray Norman talking on the radio about climate issues.

- 1 Why is Ray on the programme?
 - A To explain why climate change is happening.
 - **B** To give listeners some positive news.
 - **C** To talk about extreme weather around the world.
 - **D** To talk about environmental issues.
- 2 Ray says that the current situation is being changed by ...
 - A technology and world leaders.
 - **B** world leaders and young people.
 - **C** young people and scientists.
 - **D** young people and technology.
- **3** What does Ray say has changed in the last 50 years?
 - A More scientists are studying climate change.
 - **B** There is more pollution.
 - **C** More people are aware of climate issues.
 - **D** More children want to become scientists.
- 4 What does Ray say about people he knows?
 - A They are eating less meat than before.
 - B They have helped him to try a meat-free diet.
 - C They are more careful about supermarket shopping.
 - **D** They eat out more in restaurants.
- 5 Why does Ray mention renewable energy?
 - A He thinks everyone should feel positive about it.
 - **B** He wants to encourage more people to use it.
 - C He is worried about how much it costs.
 - **D** He thinks we should avoid using it.
- 6 Ray says that electric cars ...
 - A are not used in enough cities yet.
 - **B** are not likely to be expensive to buy.
 - **C** are becoming more popular generally.
 - **D** are creating more traffic in cities.

Use of English

EXAM STRATEGY

When you do a key word transformation task, check that your answers are not only grammatically correct, but match the meaning of the first sentence.

3 Read the strategy above. Then read the example below. Why is the answer incorrect? What is the correct answer?

Her first book was definitely better than this one. GOOD

This book is definitely not as good as the other one.

4 For each question, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given.

1	. We will eat as soon as eve UNTIL	eryone arrives.
	We	arrives.
2	He is too young to watch ENOUGH	this film.
	He	watch this film.
3	In my opinion, the plot was CONCERNED	as boring.
	As,	the plot was boring.
4	Personally, I like films mo PREFER	re than novels.
	Personally,	novels.
5	Only real horror fans will IF	enjoy this movie!
	You will only enjoy this m real horror fan!	ovie
6	9	cinema tonight. I don't want f seeing it on the big screen.
	9	cinema tonight. I don't want he opportunity of seeing it on

Reading

EXAM STRATEGY

When you do a gapped-text task, read the text and think about what sort of information might fill each gap. Then look at the options to see if any of them match your ideas.

5 Read the strategy above. Then quickly read the text in Ex 6. What is the topic of each paragraph? What sort of information might fill each gap?

6 Six sentences have been removed from the article. Choose from sentences A–I the one which fills each gap (1–6). There are three extra sentences which you do not need to use.

The benefits of books

Reading is one of the most popular leisure activities in the world. And despite the digital revolution, people still love books – as many as 1 million are published every year in the US alone. 1_ _ First of all, reading is a great way of expanding your knowledge. 'The more that you read, the more things you will know,' said the great US author Dr Seuss.

Dr Seuss clearly knew a lot, as although he is best known for his children's books, he was also a poet, screenwriter and film-maker, among other things! Of course, it isn't only facts that we learn from books. In novels, we come across people, places, situations and cultures that we might never experience in our daily lives. 2____ Thinking about things from another person's perspective can help us to be more understanding of other people and to improve our relationships with them.

Books can also lift our imagination. The Brazilian writer Paulo Coelho said, 'The book is a film that takes place in the mind of the reader.' Many book lovers would argue that books are in fact better than films, because in a film we only see things through the director's eyes. 3 you ever read a book, but when you see it as a film, it just isn't the same? The characters, places or events can be very different from how you imagined them. 4 They give people the opportunity to share and compare different opinions about the same book.

The effort of focusing on the words we read, and following the plot of a novel, is an excellent mental exercise. The thinking and understanding involved in reading helps to develop our ability to think clearly and improves our brain power. Reading is also a great way to improve communication skills. 5____ At the same time, we often increase our vocabulary. This can be useful at all ages, not just for children or for someone learning a new language. Many of them live alone, and a book can be like a friend that helps to fill the empty hours. There is also evidence that reading regularly helps to reduce memory loss, keeping short-term memory effective for longer.

- A We can learn from good writers how to express our own ideas more clearly.
- **B** And authors often make us see things from the point of view of one or more different characters.
- C However, we may not be reading as much as we did in the past.
- **D** With a book, on the other hand, different readers often understand things differently.
- **E** There are several reasons why they have so many fans.
- Some people find that they sleep better after reading as well.
- **G** But reading may be of particular benefit to older people.
- H Another disadvantage is that there are no special effects in a book.
- I This is one reason why book groups are so popular.

Speaking

EXAM STRATEGY

When you answer questions, don't make your replies too short. Avoid giving one-word answers even if they're correct give reasons and examples where appropriate. Try to say as much as possible to show your range of language.

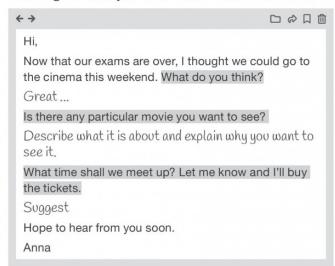
- 7 Read the strategy above. Then read the first question in the exam task in Ex 8. Think about your answer. Try to include a reason and an example.
- 8 Answer the questions about the environment.
 - 1 Would you describe yourself as a nature lover?
 - 2 Which environmental issues are most important to you?
 - 3 Have you ever taken part in an event connected with the environment?
 - 4 Which aspects of our daily lives have the worst impact on nature?
 - 5 What sort of things does your school do to protect the environment?
 - 6 How can the natural world help people mentally and physically?
 - 7 Is too much emphasis given to environmental issues in the media?
 - 8 What do you think is the best way to teach children about the environment?

Writing

EXAM STRATEGY

When you do a writing task, make sure you include all the information you are asked for.

- 9 Read the strategy above. Then look at the exam task in Ex 10. Make notes for each content point before you start writing. Check your finished answer to make sure you have included each point.
- 10 You want to see a movie with your English-speaking friend Anna. Read her email below. Then write an email to Anna, including the notes you have made. Write 80-130 words.



3.1 VOCABULARY



Get well soon





1 a What can you remember about the vlog? Complete the text with the words and phrases below.

t	oackache burn fl nfection mosquite	lu got a cold o bite out of bro	heart attack eath sore throat
Ja fe re ba	imes isn't feeling gre It a bit ¹ ally ² ad that he thought he bw he thinks he has ⁴	eat. He went for a When h and a pain e was having a ³	run this morning and e got home, he had a in his chest. It was so
Be a fa fa s re	ecky went to the doc 5 ct, she had an ⁷ st because she also	tor because she to a control of the	thought she had m the sun. In from a really bad Becky she needed to ———.
b	▶ 3.01 Watch o	or listen again an	id check.
	noose the correct an If you have, it's		at.
	A a sore throat		
	A a fever	B an infection	88 degrees or more. C a mosquito bite
		B get infected	C get out of breath
	A a cut Sometimes you get	B a burn if you breath	C a mosquito bite te in smoke.
6	An injury caused by A an infection	something sharp	
	3.02 Listen to six s	speakers. Match	them to the words
	a cold a heart attac an infection backa		tes
1 2 3			
4			
5			

4 Complete the article with words and phrases from the previous exercises.

When to see the doctor

You don't usually need to see the doctor for small injuries.
If you're chopping vegetables with a knife and you get a small ¹ , or you pick up something hot and get a ² , just wash it under running water and there keep it covered to avoid getting an ³
If you have a ⁴ and a ⁵ , don't
worry – you're probably just getting a ⁶ ,
but stay home until you feel better. If you have a
⁷ if your temperature is 38 degrees or
more – you may have 8 That's more serious.
Go to bed, keep warm and drink plenty of water.
However, there are some things you should ask the doctor
about. If you have ⁹ that feels painful when
you sit or stand, you may need treatment. If you get
even when you aren't doing exercise, that
may be a sign of a more serious problem. And of course,
anyone who has pains in their chest should go straight to
hospital - they could be having a ¹¹

5 REAL ENGLISH Complete the dialogue with the phrases below.

	nang on a sec how come I'm epic random to cut a long story short
Α	Hi Lewis. How are you doing?
В	1, mate. What's up?
Α	2I can't hear you. I'll find
	somewhere quieter to talk
В	3! What's going on?
Α	I'm actually at the hospital. And I'm calling to say I can't meet you later.
В	4? What happened?

- A Well, my dad was getting out of breath, he had this chest pain ... Anyway, ⁵_______, he's had a heart attack. I'm with him now.
- **B** That's terrible. Is he all right?
- A He'll be fine. But can we meet tomorrow instead?
- **B** Yeah, of course. No problem.
- 6 VOCABULARY BOOSTER Now practise Illnesses and injuries vocabulary on page 106.

2

3

2 Does her father have a serious illness?

3 What did you talk to the doctor about?

4 Will I be able to go back to school next week?

- 4 Rewrite the direct questions as indirect questions beginning with Can, Do or Have. Where's the library? → Do you know where the library is? 1 Which medicine are you taking?
- 5 Who left their bag in the waiting room?
- 6 Did they go home after they left the hospital?
- 7 How did you get this infection?
- 5 Complete the phone call between a doctor (D) and a patient (P). Rewrite the direct questions as indirect questions.



- **D** What's the problem? P I think I have the flu, doctor. I'm very hot, and I have pains in my arms and legs. And I'm very tired – I can't even walk upstairs. D Hmm. Do you have a fever? P I'm not sure. I didn't have one yesterday. **D** When did you last take your temperature? **P** This morning. It was normal. Is it serious? **D** Well, it might be the flu. What happened when you tried to walk upstairs? P I got out of breath and I had to sit down. D I see. Is there anything you are worried about at the
- P Well, ... I have an important exam tomorrow. Will I be able to go back to school in time to take it?
- **D** I'm sure you will!
- 6 Imagine you are travelling to another country. Write three indirect questions using the prompts.
 - 1 where / go / feel ill?
 - 2 have to pay / see a doctor?
 - 3 take / own medicine / into (name of country)?

3.3 LISTENING

large amounts of _

apple or _

What can you remember about healthy living from the Student's Book? Complete the sentences with the words below.

avocados banana caffeine calories cups sugar tea vegetables water

1		ly need to drink two litres of y. It depends on many things, including
		we eat and what else we drink.
2	Both, and coffee contain, which keeps you awake, so it's a good idea not to drink	
		a day.
3	may protect again:	also contain things which st heart attacks. However, they are, so you may put on weight if you

4 Fruit smoothies may seem healthy, but they can contain

_ instead.

and it's better to eat an

2 <a>3.03 Listen to the presentation and choose the best summary.

- A According to scientific research, many foods we believe are healthy are actually bad for us.
- **B** Some foods people believe are unhealthy are actually better for our health than we think.
- C There is no such thing as unhealthy food, only unhealthy eating habits.
- 3 (3) 3.03 Listen again. Are the sentences true (*T*), false (*F*) or not given (*NG*)?



- Sugar-free fizzy drinks are more harmful to our health than drinks that are high in sugar.
- 2 Only a few people become ill as a result of eating bread and other products that contain wheat. ____
- 3 Low-fat dairy foods always contain more sugar than highfat foods. ____
- 4 Drinking a lot of coffee can cause heart attacks. ___
- **5** We shouldn't believe something unless the evidence provided by scientists shows it's true. ____

STRATEGY Recognising a range of phrasal verbs

When you listen to an interview, podcast or dialogue, speakers will often use a variety of phrasal verbs to express themselves. The meaning of some phrasal verbs is easy to understand, but with others you will need to think about the context to understand them. The more phrasal verbs you know, the more you will understand when you are listening.

- 4 (3) 3.04 Read the strategy above. Listen to the extracts and choose the best meaning of each phrasal verb: A or B.
 - 1 look at
 - A examine or discuss something
 - **B** look towards something
 - 2 put off
 - A delay something
 - B not want to do something
 - 3 deal with
 - A manage something difficult
 - **B** solve a problem
 - 4 point out
 - A use your finger to indicate something
 - **B** mention something which people may have forgotten
 - 5 feed on
 - A use a fact or situation for your own advantage
 - B eat something
 - 6 stick with
 - A continue doing or using something
 - B continue to support someone
 - 7 rule out
 - A prevent something from happening
 - B make something unlikely
 - 8 make of
 - A create
 - **B** understand
- **5 PRONUNCIATION** Decide if the <u>underlined</u> sounds in sentences 1–6 are pronounced as $/\delta$ / (voiced) or $/\theta$ / (unvoiced).
 - 1 The truth about unhealthy foods is surprising.
 - 2 Do you think that's a good idea?
 - 3 Who is the author of that report?
 - **4** Try to breathe through your mouth.
 - 5 She'll be <u>th</u>irteen next mon<u>th</u>.
 - 6 They don't know each other.
- 6 🐠 3.05 Listen and check. Then listen again and repeat.
- 7 MEDIATION Your friend is planning to give up foods made from wheat and only eat low-fat dairy foods. Use the information from the listening to write an email to your friend giving three pieces of advice on whether this is a good idea or not.

32 Unit 3

		The nurse will do a blood	phrases fro
		Antibiotics are used to cure	CITY UNIVI
		You need to get a Dentists advise you to go for	FAQs
		If you want to keep	✓ How can
	6	You should look after your mental	
	7	Sometimes a natural	It's important exercise each
		It often takes time to recover	can also ²
		A lot of people take	when there a
	10	You can sometimes treat	forget your ³ . there are peo
	Α	a check-up every six months.	there are pec
	В	after surgery.	4 4
	C	in shape, do plenty of exercise.	1
		serious infections.	97638
		treatment can be very effective.	7689
		vitamins each day to improve their health.	
		test to find out what's wrong with you.	
	Η.	the symptoms of a cold with honey.	1
	١.	prescription for this medicine.	23
	J	health as well as keeping fit.	➤ What sho
2		noose the correct alternative.	If there are c
	1	When my dad got the flu last winter, it took him three	follow this lin
	2	weeks to recover / check-up . We are going to treat / recover you with a new kind of	'What's wron
	_	medicine.	may want to like aspirin th
	3	I don't like taking medicine from the doctor – I prefer to	for – or use ⁷
		use natural / cure treatments to make me feel better.	lemon. If you
	4	Many people look after their body but forget to take care	if you ⁸
		of their mental health / symptoms .	and you don'
	5	You can't buy this drug over the counter – you need a	centre.
	_	treatment / prescription.	➤ What wil
	6	She has a serious infection, but the doctors are confident they can cure / recover her.	The doctor w
	7	Without antibiotics, check-ups / surgery would be much	and might do
	Ċ	more dangerous.	a serious illne
	8	If you have symptoms / tests that include a headache	treatment or you to the lo
		and a fever, you should see your doctor.	you to the lo
3	Co	omplete the sentences with the words and phrases below.	Link
	1 6	plood test cure go for a check-up keep in shape	6
	r	mental health surgery symptoms take vitamin	
	1	A cough, a sore throat and a fever are often of flu.	
	2	If you feel unwell, you should at the	4
	_	medical centre.	EL
	3	Healthy food and regular exercise can help you to	
			5 Complete th
	4	Chris needed to repair his broken leg.	least one wo
	5	I want to find out what the problem is, so I'm going to do	1 If I feel ill,
	-	a	2 I've never
	6	Do you think we will ever be able to	3 I never go
		the common cold?	4 To avoid
	7	Some people C in the winter to	5 I'm not w
		protect themselves from colds and flu.	VOCABULAR
	8	Research shows that doing exercise can improve your	vocabulary

1 Match the sentence halves.

4 Complete the Student Health Service FAQs with words and $\dot{\rm phrases}$ from the previous exercises.

CITY UNIVERSITY INTRANET	Q
FAQs	
➤ How can I take care of myself while I'm s	tudying?
It's important to 1 by doing sexercise each day. To protect yourself from getting can also 2, especially in the swhen there are lots of colds and flu around. Lastly forget your 3 – it you are feet there are people you can talk to.	ng ill, you winter y, don't
➤ What should I do if I feel ill?	
If there are changes to your health and you feel use follow this link and check your 4	e, you medicines d see have
➤ What will happen at the health centre?	
The doctor will give you a complete ¹⁰ to see if y a serious illness. If the doctor thinks you need fur treatment or even ¹² , they n you to the local hospital, although that is less usu	ther nay refer
# The state of the	100

he sentences so they are true for you. Use at ord or phrase from this lesson in each sentence.

Τ.	ii i leet iii, i usuatty	
2	I've never had	

- o to the doctor for _____ getting ill, I ______. vorried about _____
 - RY BOOSTER Now practise Getting better

vocabulary on page 106.

р	read the sentences and decide if they are talking about resent, past or future ability. Until 2007, people could smoke in public places in the UK.	 2 C How are you feeling? D Not too bad. I still have a cough, but I 5 walk to the end of the road this
3 4 5 6	New treatments mean patients are able to recover more quickly after surgery	morning. C That's good. Last week, you 6 walk upstairs without getting out of breath. D Yes, it's great 7 get outdoors again! And I hope I 8 start going to the gym again soon! 3 E Your brother isn't keeping in shape. He never does any exercise at all!
8 9 10	The doctor wasn't able to take my call Ali hopes to be able to study medicine I have my own room and I enjoy being able to study whenever I want They didn't succeed in treating the infection Do you know when you will be able to come back to school?	 F I know. And he ⁹ understand that this is very important for your health. E Do you think you will ¹⁰ get him to go for a check-up? F I hope so. I think I've ¹¹ persuading him that he needs help. Let's see what happens.
	hoose the correct answer: A, B or C. If you arrive too late, you see the	4 Complete the texts with the words and phrases below. More than one answer may be possible.
	doctor. A can't B couldn't C won't be able to Until the invention of X-rays, doctors 'see'	able to can could couldn't managed to not being able to succeeded in were able to weren't able to will be able to
	inside the human body. A can't B couldn't C didn't manage to I'm glad Rudolfo pass his medical exam.	In the past, surgery always involved making a big cut in the patient's body. This was so that doctors 1 see and feel what they were doing.
4	A could B managed to C succeeded in If you look into this microscope, you see the bacteria that cause the infection. A can B could C manage to	But in this kind of 'open surgery' there's a lot of blood, and 2see clearly inside the body meant doctors 3always be sure they had 4fixing the problem. Patients also
5	Scientists have been searching for a cure for this disease, but they find one yet. A couldn't B didn't manage to C haven't been	took longer to recover – it was often days before they 5 go home. In recent years, scientists working with artificial intelligence
6	able to Molly drink milk because it always gives her a stomach ache.	have ⁶ create tiny instruments that fit inside the patient's body. Surgeons now regularly use robots to help them perform surgery. This means they do things they ⁸
7	A couldn't B hasn't managed to C isn't able to Tara's microphone isn't working – we hear a word she's saying.	do in the past. These techniques mean patients recover more quickly, have fewer infections and are often go home the same day. Perhaps in the future, robots 10 carry out
8	A can't B couldn't C didn't manage to play football once last week!	complete operations without needing a doctor.
0	A can't B didn't manage to C haven't been able to By the end of my training, I work as a nurse.	5 Complete the sentences using the prompts and your own ideas to talk about ability. David is nervous of water because (present, negative)
	A will be able to B will manage to C will succeed in	he can't swim. 1 Most people don't know that I (present, negative)
b	complete the dialogues with the correct form of <i>can</i> , <i>could</i> , <i>e able to</i> , <i>manage to</i> or <i>succeed in</i> . More than one answer hay be possible.	The café was so busy that (past, negative)
	A Did you ¹ see the doctor yesterday? B No, I ² get an appointment after 4.00 p.m. And I ³ go this morning	3 I have a lot of coursework this weekend, so (future, negative)
	because I have classes until lunchtime. A What about later today?	We didn't get your message, so (past, negative)
	B They told me to call before 12.00 p.m. I hope the doctor 4 see me this afternoon.	5 I hope that during the summer (future, positive)

1	What can you remember about the article in the Student's Book? Complete the sentences with the words below. There are two words you do not need.
	contagious decimate fleas infect outbreak reside vaccinate virulence
2	 In Athens in 430 BCE, the of the disease meant that many people died very quickly. The bubonic plague was carried by rats and spread by the that lived on them. The flu was able to around one-third of the world's population in 1918–1919. Several extremely flu pandemics have occurred in the last 100 years. Progress in medical science means we are able to cope better with a(n) of a serious disease. The most effective way to protect people from infectious diseases is to them. 3.06 Read the text quickly. Which of the following information does it not include? A where zoonotic viruses come from B which species transmitted the Covid-19 virus
	 C what a zoonotic virus is D how to reduce the number of future pandemics E how to protect yourself from catching a virus F why some viruses are especially dangerous G how zoonotic viruses are transmitted
3	 Are the sentences true (<i>T</i>), false (<i>F</i>) or not given (<i>NG</i>)? 1 Viruses carried by animals have caused some dangerous human diseases 2 Viruses usually kill their hosts 3 Viruses aim to move from one host to another 4 Zoonotic viruses are more common in areas where people and animals liver close together 5 Environmental problems are partly responsible for the rise in zoonotic viruses 6 Scientists are discovering how to reduce the risk of more pandemics in the future
	STRATEGY Dealing with unknown words
	You will often encounter new words in a text. To help you work out their meaning, ask yourself the following questions. • What type of word is it? (a noun, adjective, etc.) • Is the word similar to another word I know? • Does it sound similar to a word in my language? • What context is the word in? What is the sentence about?
4	Read the strategy above. Look at the <u>underlined</u> words in the text and identify what type of word each is. Then match them to the definitions. 1 watch something over a period of time

3 protected from an illness.

5 change or adapt _

6 only one_

8 begin from.

4 bacteria or viruses that cause illness

places where important things happen.

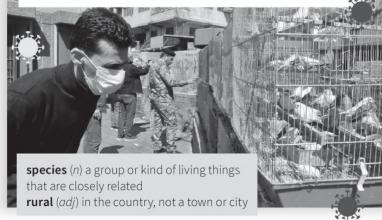
ZOONOTIC VIRUSES- the future of pandemics?

The virus which caused the Covid-19 outbreak in 2020 was a zoonotic virus – that is, a virus which is able to cross from animals to humans. But it is not unique. Zoonotic viruses have been responsible for a number of serious diseases in recent years, including Ebola, Zika, SARS and HIV / AIDS. More are being discovered all the time, and many scientists believe they will become more common in future.

Viruses cannot multiply unless they live on another animal, their host. Viruses may not harm this host, but when they cross to a new species that is not immune, they become more dangerous. In addition, some viruses are able to change and adapt to new conditions. The fact that they mutate so quickly makes it very difficult to develop an effective vaccine. So how have these viruses been able to jump from one species to another?

Scientists believe that many of these viruses originate in the large tropical forests in Africa, Asia and South America, where there is a wide variety of species of animals and birds. Where there are many different species living in one area, they say, there is a similar diversity of pathogens. Climate change and deforestation has meant that many species' habitats are also changing. As a result, the species carrying the viruses are moving to new areas. These changes bring people and animals into closer contact, creating hotspots where viruses are able to cross into the human population more easily.

So how can we reduce the risk of more pandemics in the future? Most scientists agree that more investment and more research are needed. Outbreaks often start in rural areas with small populations, so one solution is to regularly check the health of people living in hotspot areas. This is already happening in parts of Africa, where health workers monitor the local population for any signs of disease caused by viruses. Another solution is to take action to reduce the amount of deforestation. But one thing is clear - human health is closely connected to the health of the planet, and we can't protect one without protecting the other.



- 5 Based on the information in the text, complete the sentences with your own ideas.
 - 1 The most worrying thing about zoonotic viruses is
 - 2 There is a risk of more pandemics in the future because
 - 3 If more investment and research are provided

Unit 3

3.7 GLOBAL SKILLS

- 1 What can you remember from the Student's Book about ways of managing emotions? Match words 1–6 to definitions A–F.
 - 1 self-blame_
 - 2 blaming others ____
 - 3 acceptance ____
 - 4 over-thinking_
 - 5 positive refocusing ____
 - 6 refocusing on planning ____
 - A having the same thoughts over and over again
 - **B** making plans for the future
 - **C** believing someone else is responsible for something bad happening
 - **D** thinking about happier thoughts and experiences
 - **E** believing you are responsible for something bad happening
 - **F** recognising what has happened was an accident and not anyone's fault
- 2 Think about the emotions you might feel in the following situations.
 - 1 Your family has just moved to another town.
 - 2 You lost an important piece of schoolwork.
 - 3 You left a favourite possession on a train.
- 3 Read the stories about three teenagers who have experienced a difficult situation. Answer the questions.
 - 1 Which situation in Ex 2 is each person talking about?
 - 2 Which emotions below do you think each person felt?

amusement anger anxiety delight excitement gratitude jealousy loneliness regret relief sadness worry

3 Who do you think managed their emotions best?

- 4 **3.07** Listen to two students, Chloe and Sam, discussing the three situations. Which of the responses in Ex 1 do they mention for each person?
- **5** Complete Chloe and Sam's advice to Emma with the words below.

acceptance blaming emotions over-thinking planning positive refocus responsible for

	Comm	onte
~	Comm	CHILD

Dear Emma,	
You aren't 1	this situation, so self-
blame is not necessar	ry. But neither is ²
your parents - they or	nly want what's best for you.
3	of your new situation will help you to feel
	to move on. You need to recognise how you
feel - why not try writi	ing down your ⁴ ?
	of time thinking about a big event, but
5	won't help. OK, you miss your friends,
but try to 6	on what's positive – you're
still in touch with then	n on social media. Finally, it's time to
refocus on 7	Think about how you made
friends before, and de	ecide to be nice to your new classmates.
You can still meet up	with your old friends in the holidays. Be _ and go for it!
Chloe and Sam	

6 MEDIATION Read the comment below. Write four pieces of advice for Catalina using the information and ideas in this lesson.

Catalina My best friend recently joined a sports club. She goes training several nights a week and now has a new group of friends at the club. The problem is I don't really like sport. We still see each other, but she has started spending a lot of time with them, and I'm worried she doesn't want to be my friend anymore.

FORUM CHAT

• • •

Home

About us

Advice

Your stories

Q

When bad stuff happens, how do you feel? Here are some of your stories.



Adela

I was finishing my school project on a Friday evening when my friend called. We started chatting, and I meant to close the document, but instead I deleted it! It was a whole term's work! I couldn't believe I'd done something so stupid! At first, I blamed it on my friend, but in the end, I had to admit to myself that it was my fault – I shouldn't have answered my phone. So then I thought, OK, it's happened, how can I fix it? Looking through my notebooks, I realised I had most of the information in my notes – so I could use these to retype my project again over the weekend. Phew! ©



Mateo

I was with my friends, coming home on the train from shopping in the city. I was wearing my leather jacket. It was quite warm, so I took it off and put it in the luggage rack over my seat. We started chatting to some other people – they were joking and making us laugh. Suddenly my friend said, 'This is our stop'. We quickly got off the train, and as the doors closed, I realised I didn't have my old leather jacket. It was so important to me – it belonged to my grandfather and he gave it to me just before he died. When I got home, I felt like crying. Why didn't I pick it up? I couldn't believe I'd been so stupid. I haven't told my dad yet – I don't know what he'll say.



Fmma

We moved house in the summer and I've started at a new school this term. I could have stayed at my old school, but my parents think the new school is better. I know they want the best for me, but I feel as if it's my fault we've moved. I hate my new school. It's hard to make friends when everyone is already in their groups. No one talks to me and I spend most of my time on my own. I miss my old school and all my friends. They keep sending me messages saying they miss me too. That's nice, of course, but I can see they are all having a good time without me and that hurts. Why did we move?

when

1		ree situations. What do you think the might a) ask and b) advise in each one?	Pharmacist	Do you know if you are ⁵ to anything?
	Someone		Anne	Sorry, do you think you could
		cut that looks red and might be infected.		that last part?
		gh, a sore throat and a fever.		Are there any medicines you can't take?
	3 injured th	eir leg three days ago and it is painful to walk on.		No, nothing.
2	(a) 3.08 List in Ex 1.	ten to three dialogues and check your ideas	Pharmacist	OK, good. ⁷ suggest that you go home and rest for a few days?
2	Uso the prov	npts to write questions and sentences.	Extract 3	
3		u / mean / that?		I think I've hurt myself quite badly.
	1 What / yo	u / mean / mac:	Pharmacist	Yes, I see. Can you ⁸ wher
	2 May/sug	gest / you / rest / a few days?	Lena	this happened? Three days ago Could you
	3 Sorry/I/	not catch / that.	Pharmacist	Yes, I can give you some painkillers. It's that you rest as much
	4 What/yo	u / advise / me / do?		as possible.
	= \\\/\			ten and complete a similar dialogue.
	5 What/yo	u / suggest / for / sore throat?	Customer	I've got a burn on my hand. Could you ?
	6 Can/you	/ tell me / when / happened?	Pharmacist	Can I see it? Hmm. Can you tell me 2?
	7 Would/I	/ able to / see / cut?	Customer	What do you ³ ?
				What caused the burn?
	8 You/kno	w / if / you / allergic / anything?	Customer	Oh, right. I was ⁴ and I
				spilled some.
	9 Could/yo	ou / recommend / something / for / pain?		Have you ⁵ on it?
				No, I haven't. What do you ⁶
1	LO Ithink/b	est / course of action / see / a doctor.		Do you know if you're ⁷ ? I don't think so.
	II Corruluo	/think /vov / sould /ronget /last nort?		I think the ⁸ is to use this
-	LI Sorry/yo	u / think / you / could / repeat / last part?	Filalillacist	cream two or three times a day.
	It / really i	important / you / rest.	Customer	OK. Thanks.
-	12 It / Teatty I	importantly you'r rest.	Pharmacist	And it's really important that you wash your
4	Which quest	tions in Ex 3 are asked by a) the pharmacist and		hands before you ⁹ Preparing for a conversation
_				fficult to have a conversation with a native
Э	below.	uestions and sentences in Ex 3 to the functions		English for the first time. Spend a few minutes
		radvice		the questions they might ask you and what you
		ut about the problem	need to ask	them.
		understanding		
	_	vice		g to write a script of a similar dialogue.
6		mplete the extracts using words from Ex 3.		liday in the UK, you feel unwell. You go to the get some advice. Plan your work.
U		again and check.		ategy above and make some notes about the
	Extract 1			ou and the pharmacist might ask. Try to use
	Jose	I'd like some advice about an injury.		phrase for each function. You can use the
		Would I 1 to see it?	illnesses, inju	uries and treatments below or your own ideas.
		It's quite red. You might have an infection.	allergy b	ackache cut headache infection
		What do you mean ² ?		antihistamine bandage
	Pharmacist	The cut may have got some bacteria in it. I think the best course ³	painkiller	
	Extract 2	is to see a doctor as soon as possible	9 Write your so have	cript. When you have finished, check that you
	Anne	I have a sore throat. What would you 4?		iety of phrases to ask for and give advice. ast one phrase for checking understanding.

1 Think about the questions.

- 1 Does anyone in your family bake bread or cakes?
- 2 Have you ever tried baking?
- 3 Why do you think baking has become so popular in recent years?



2 Complete the plan for writing a recipe with the phrases below. Then read the recipe quickly and check your ideas.

engage the reader explain the reasons finish positively give detailed instructions provide the ingredients

Paragraph A – to	and	
	_ for making the recipe	
Paragraph B – to		
Paragraphs C and D	- to	
Paragraph E – to	<u> </u>	

A If it's raining outside and you are feeling a bit sad, why not do some baking? I'd like to recommend a really easy recipe for chocolate brownies that you can make at home. I learned it from my mum – it's our favourite way to spend a wet afternoon!



- B To make the brownies, you'll need 185 g butter, 185 g dark chocolate, 85 g flour, 40 g cocoa powder, 275 g sugar and three eggs.
- To begin with, cut the butter and chocolate into small pieces and put them in a bowl. Melt them together over a small saucepan of hot water. Stir them from time to time. Leave the mixture to cool at room temperature. While you are waiting for the chocolate to cool, heat the oven to 180°C. At the same time, mix together the flour and cocoa powder in another bowl.
- Next, break the eggs into a third bowl and add the sugar. To get the best result, mix them together using an electric mixer until they look thick and creamy, like a milkshake. After that, pour the chocolate mixture over the eggs and mix everything together. Then stir in the cocoa and flour mixture.
- **E** Finally, pour the mixture into a baking tin. Put it in the oven and bake for 25–30 minutes. When it's cool, cut the brownies into squares and serve with cream or ice cream. You'll soon be feeling happier!

STRATEGY Sequencing phrases for instructions

When we give instructions, it's a good idea to include sequencing expressions so that it is clear which order we need to do something in.

chrases below. Er before first of all lastly next exame time then while , mix a teaspoon of yeast and a aspoon of sugar in 100 ml of warm water. that, leave them in a warm room for 1–15 minutes to develop. you are waiting, mix 450 g of bread our and one teaspoon of salt in a large bowl. the thing you need to do is add
ribing two things happening at the same time:
plete the instructions for baking bread with the words phrases below. er before first of all lastly next exame time then while
er before first of all lastly next same time then while, mix a teaspoon of yeast and a aspoon of sugar in 100 ml of warm water that, leave them in a warm room for 1–15 minutes to develop you are waiting, mix 450 g of bread our and one teaspoon of salt in a large bowl. the thing you need to do is add
e same time then while
aspoon of sugar in 100 ml of warm water. that, leave them in a warm room for 1–15 minutes to develop. you are waiting, mix 450 g of bread our and one teaspoon of salt in a large bowl. thing you need to do is add
that, leave them in a warm room for 1–15 minutes to develop. you are waiting, mix 450 g of bread bur and one teaspoon of salt in a large bowl. he thing you need to do is add
our and one teaspoon of salt in a large bowl. ne thing you need to do is add
nother 200 ml of warm water to the yeast and sugar ixture.
pour the yeast and sugar mixture ver the flour and stir well to make a smooth dough.
eave it to rise in a warm place for one hour. At heat the oven to 200°C.
you put the bread into the oven, eck it has reached the correct temperature.
, bake the bread for 35 minutes.
at the text in Ex 2 and find
x examples of imperative verb forms. It the butter and chocolate
vo examples of infinitive clauses of purpose.

- **6** You are going to write a blog post giving instructions on how to make a recipe from your country. Do some research online or ask someone in your family. Make notes about the ingredients and the method.
- **7** Plan your work. Use the paragraph structure in Ex 2. Think about ...
 - what information you will include in each paragraph.
 - which useful phrases you will use.
- **8** Write your recipe. Use imperatives and try to include at least one infinitive clause of purpose.
- 9 CHECK YOUR WORK Did you ...
 - start your post in an engaging way?
 - follow the paragraph structure?
 - · include useful phrases from this lesson?
- finish in a positive way?

G	ra	mmar
L	Co	orrect the mistakes in the questions and sentences.
		Who did miss the school bus this morning?
	2	What the pharmacist suggested you take?
	3	Can you tell me when began the symptoms?
	4	Which do you want size: large or small?
	5	Who the virus did affect most seriously?
	6	I would like to know can you fix this problem.
	7	Where from did you get this document?
2	Cł	noose the correct alternative.
		My grandfather is 80, but he can / could still run upstairs
		without getting out of breath.
	2	Yuna really wants to go to medical school – I hope she
		manages to / succeeds in pass the exam tomorrow.
	3	I've been looking for some new sunglasses, but I
		couldn't / haven't been able to find any I like.
	4	Some dairy products upset Yasmin's stomach – she can't / couldn't eat butter or cheese.
	_	Were you able to / succeeded in keep in shape while the
	5	gym was closed?
	6	After phoning four times, Reika finally could /
		managed to get an appointment with the doctor.
	7	
		be able to / manage to log into your account.
V	oc	abulary
		noose the correct answer: A, B or C.
		Make sure you wash that nasty cut properly – you don't
	_	want to get
		A a cold B a sore throat C an infection

1	Make sure you wa want to get	sh that nasty cut prop 	erly – you don't
		B a sore throat	c an infection
2		is really polluted – evene with	
	A a burn	B a cough	C a fever
3	There were lots of all got really bad	insects where we were	nt camping – we
	A flu	B mosquito bites	C backache
4		ing in the mountains a etvery	
	A out of breath	B an infection	C a heart attac
5	I have may be getting a	and it hurts when I cold.	talk – I think I
	A backache	B a sore throat	C flu
6	It's very common	to get i	n the winter.
		B out of breath	
7	My uncle had pair	ns in his chest and wer	nt to hospital – he
	thought he was h	aving	
	A a burn	B a mosquito bite	C a heart attac
8		you have at your computer.	_ – you spend to
	Λ fl.	P an infaction	C hackacha

4	Complete the sentences with the words and phrases
	below. There is one word or phrase that you do not need.

1	mental health prescription recover symptoms treatments vitamins
	You can by doing regular exercise.
2	I had the flu really badly last winter and it took me more than a month to
3	There's evidence that taking protects you from some illnesses.
4	To stay healthy, it's a good idea to with your doctor once a year.
5	Pain in the chest and feeling out of breath may be of a heart attack.
6	Some people prefer to use naturalsuch as a honey and lemon drink for a sore throat.
7	Scientists will probably find for some serious illnesses in the future.
8	In the UK, you can't buy antibiotics without a from your doctor.

Cumulative review

- 5 Choose the correct answer: A, B or C.
 - A Can you tell me what 1____?
 - B | recently went on holiday. Since | got back | 2____ sleep properly and I feel really strange.
 - A I see. 3 symptoms are you worried about?
 - **B** I've got a 4___ and my head hurts. But the worst thing is, sometimes | 5 ___ stand up without feeling out of breath.
 - A Let's take your temperature ... Yes, you have a 6_
 - **B** Is it serious?
 - A We'll do a 7___ to see if you caught a virus on holiday. Then we can decide which 8___ will make you feel better.
 - B Have you any idea how soon I'll 9____, doctor?
 - A Don't worry. I'm sure you 10 go back to school next week.
 - 1 A is the problem **B** the problem is **C** the problem
 - 2 A didn't succeed in B don't manage to C haven't been
 - 3 A Who
- **B** Which

able to

- C Why

- 4 A sore throat
- B flu
- C heart attack

- 5 A couldn't **B** mosquito bite 6 A backache
- B wasn't able to C can't C fever
- 7 A blood test
- **B** surgery
- C check-up

- 8 A cure
 - 9 A recover
- **B** symptom B cure
- C treatment

C treat

- 10 A could
- **B** will succeed in
- C will be able to

- k
- - A flu
- **B** an infection
- C backache

REFLECT Think about the following questions.

- 1 Which lesson in this unit did you enjoy the most? Why?
- 2 Which of the grammar points did you find most difficult?
- 3 What was the most interesting thing you learnt about "unhealthy" foods?
- 4 What can you do to help you practise asking for and giving advice?

This is who we are





1	a	What can you remember about the vlog? Are the
	se	entences about Alicia true (T) or false (F)?

- 1 Alicia is quite cheerful and she doesn't complain about much her attitude to life is positive. ____
- 2 She is extremely ambitious and also very hard-working. _
- 3 She's still not very sociable, although her friends say she is quite talkative. ____
- 4 She's quite easy-going and it takes a lot to upset her. __
- 5 Although she's a vlogger, Alicia doesn't really enjoy talking about herself because she's very modest.
- **6** She tries to be generous and doesn't understand why some vloggers are selfish. ____
- **b** 4.01 Watch or listen again and check.
- 2 Choose the correct alternative.
 - Be careful what you say to Cara. She gets / lacks upset easily.
 - 2 My grandma is never satisfied. She **copes** / **tends** to complain about everything.
 - 3 I know the exams were hard, but **get** / **look** on the bright side they are finished now.
 - 4 Doing exercise is a good way to **cope** / **tend** with stress.
 - 5 Elana could be really successful, she just lacks / looks confidence in her ability.
 - 6 Jamal is always so happy he definitely **gets** / **has** a positive attitude to life.
- **3** Read the quotes about six people. Then match the names to the adjectives.

	ambitious determined easy-going generous modest selfish
1	'If Leah decides to do something, she'll do it – she never gives up.'
2	'Amira will always share what she has with her friends – she would do anything for anyone.'
3	'Nothing worries Tomasz – he's pretty relaxed about everything.'
4	'Finley is totally focused on himself – and he never shares anything.'
	'Amol has achieved a lot, but he never talks about his

6 'Abe plans to go to university and then get a job in

finance - he really wants to succeed.'_

4 Three teachers are meeting to choose the captain of the school sports team. Complete the dialogues with the words and phrases below. In each case, there is one word or phrase you do not need.

copes with stress easy-going determined generous

Dialogue 1

	has a positive attitude sociable talkative
Α	OK, what about Megan? She's a good leader. She to everything. And I've seen her
	play football – she's always ² to win.
В	l agree. Nothing worries her and she ³ very well – she's very ⁴
Α	Yes, and she's ⁵ She has lots of friends.
С	She's ⁶ too – she never shuts up!
Di	ialogue 2
	hard-working lacks confidence look on the bright side modest shy sociable
В	Could I suggest Heidi? She's really good at sport and very – she's always studying or training.
Α	I'm not sure. I think she ⁸ in her abilities, and she's also quite ⁹ The
_	person we choose must enjoy talking to other people.
C	I disagree. I think Heidi is just ¹⁰
	she doesn't want to discuss her achievements.
В	Also, let's be positive and try to ¹¹
	Heidi isn't as talkative as Megan!

- **5 REAL** ENGLISH Match the <u>underlined</u> phrases 1–5 in the message to phrases A–E that have the same meaning.
 - A I can't thank you enough ____
 - B not that I'm lazy or anything __
 - C spot on ___
 - **D** you're in for a surprise ____
 - E you've made my day ___

To everyone who watched my last video and shared it, 1'm very thankful. It got over 100,000 likes! 2You've made me very happy! And thanks for all your comments too – they were 2 exactly right! Watch out for my next video – my best friends helped me to make it. 4 don't mind working hard, but sometimes it's good to share the work. There's a very special guest, so make sure you watch it. 5 lt's going to surprise you!

6 VOCABULARY BOOSTER Now practise **Personal description** vocabulary on page 107.

- 1 Choose the correct alternative. Then write the original words each person said.
 - 1 Kenji said he **had** / **has** a positive attitude to life.
 - 2 The doctor asked Tami if she was coping / is coping well with stress that week.
 - 3 They said they **are / were** interviewing people there about their shopping habits.
 - 4 Lauren told us she **hadn't / hasn't** always enjoyed going to that school.
 - 5 Nasser said he was / had been nervous at his job interview the day before.
 - 6 My uncle asked me if I **had** / **have** been to any concerts that year.
 - 7 She said she can't / couldn't talk to us then because she is / was studying.
 - 8 Shona said she will / would meet us both there at 6.30 p.m. the next day.
- 2 4.02 Read and listen to the voicemail Ella left for her friend Bill. Then complete Bill's text message using reported speech.

'Well, I've just had my interview at Oxford University. I'm still here now, actually. I'm waiting for the train home. I was really nervous before the interview. I've applied to other universities, but this is the one I really want. The interviewers started with a few easy questions, like what books I've been reading recently. They also asked me about current affairs – I don't know much about politics, so I talked about climate change. I can't tell if I did well or not, but I really hope they'll give me a place!'

100

Group chat

V VV 12 12 1			
Bill		112000	-11
Hi everyone. I had a n	nessage from E	lla at about 5.0	ı.q 0
She said she 1	•	interview at	
Oxford University. She		still	
3	She ⁴	Still	f
			_ for
the train home. She sa	aid she 3		-
really nervous before	the interview. S	he said she	
6	_ to other unive	ersities,	
but ⁷	the one s		
8	She told me	the interviewe	rs
9		sy questions, I	
what books she 10	_ with a low of	recently. T	
11	-L	,	ПСу
- 12		nt affairs – she	
said she 12	mu	ch about politi	CS
so she 13	abou	t climate chan	ge.
She 14	if she 15	5	
well or not, but she re	10		hev
17	a placel		,

a place!

- **3** Rewrite what the people said using reported speech and the words in brackets.
 - 1 'You need to look on the bright side.' (Mika / tell / Amy)
 - 2 'We'll be thinking of you when you get on the plane tomorrow.' (Ashraf and Mia / say)
 - 3 'You can have supper with us if you want.' (Nina's mum / say)
 - 4 'I saw three people I know on the way to school yesterday.' (Liam / tell / us)
 - 5 'You must start working harder if you want to pass your exams.' (my teacher / tell / me)
 - 6 'We are going bowling now.' (Ben and Sarah / tell / me)
 - 7 'Have you been studying this morning?' (they / ask / me)
 - 8 'I've sent Dom several messages this morning and he hasn't replied.' (Katya / say)
- 4 Student representatives are finding out information about students coming to a university for an interview. Read the script of the dialogue, and then write a report. Start like this: When I arrived at the university, a final-year student asked if I would answer a few questions ...
 - 1 Q Where are you from?
 - A I'm from South London.
 - 2 Q How did you get here today?
 - A I came by train.
 - **3 Q** What subject are you planning to study?
 - A I'm hoping to study environmental science.
 - **4 Q** Have you been to any other universities?
 - A Yes, I've had interviews at a couple of others.
 - **5 Q** Can you describe yourself in three words?
 - **A** OK ... I think I am ambitious, determined and hard-working.
 - 6 Q How will you feel if you get a place at this university?
 - A I'll be really happy it's my first choice. I've always wanted to study here.
 - **7 Q** OK, and finally, are you planning to take a year off before you start university?
 - A I'm not sure yet, although I know I need to decide before next summer.
- 5 Think about a time when you did one of the things below, or use your own ideas. Think about who you talked to and what they said to you. Complete the sentences.
 - met your friend's parents
 - · took part in an interview
 - met someone famous
 - 1 They asked me _____
 - 2 I said / told them (that) ____
 - 3 Tasked them _____
 - 4 They said / told me (that)

4.3 LISTENING

1	What can you remember about personality tests from the				
	Student's Book? Complete the sentences with the words				
	below				

analyse divides make decisions psychological result

- 1 Speaker 1 thinks that personality tests can help people _____ in their lives.
- 2 Speaker 2 describes the Myers-Briggs test which people into sixteen personality types.
- 3 Speaker 3 explains how, in the Rorschach test, people _____ pictures of irregular shapes.
- 4 According to Speaker 4, the Forer Effect is a ______ phenomenon where people believe whatever a personality test says about them.
- 5 Speaker 5 knows that the ______ of a personality test depends on many different things.
- 2 You are going to listen to two friends discussing an online talk about extroverts and introverts. Before you listen, do this quiz to find out your personality type.
- I prefer spending time ...

A with other people.

B by myself.

• After parties I often feel ...

 ${f A}$ happy and full of energy. ${f B}$ tired and need to relax.

- **1** I have ...
 - A lots of friends.
- B a few close friends.
- ⚠ I prefer ...
 - A talking to listening.
- **B** listening to talking.
- 🟲 I enjoy working or studying ...
 - A in a group.

B by myself.

🕻 I would describe myself as ...

A confident and sociable.

B shy and quiet.

If you chose mostly As, you may be more of an extrovert. If you chose mostly Bs, you may be more of an introvert.

3 4.03 Listen to Part 1 of the dialogue. Which ideas from the quiz do they mention? Then answer the questions.

- 1 What situations make an extrovert feel good?
- 2 How do introverts feel on their own?
- 3 Which personality type does society favour?
- 4 What were the children encouraged to do at the summer camp when Susan Cain was a child?

STRATEGY Recognising exemplification

Pay attention to examples the speaker gives you while describing or explaining something. These examples will help you to understand what they're trying to say or can make their story more personal. Some typical phrases for giving examples are for example, that is, such as, for instance, like, just to give you an idea of, imagine, to show you what I mean.

4 Read the strategy above. Can you remember which phrase Katalin uses to introduce the story about Susan Cain?

5	● 4.04	Listen to Part 2 and complete the sentences with
	the phra	ses for giving examples below.

for example for instance imagine like such as to show you what I mean

- 1 So, _______, a typical classroom is often organised with students sitting around a table.
- 2 Activities ______ brainstorming and group project work are examples of this.
- **3** Big companies often select people based on how they perform in groups, ______ in a problem-solving task.
- 4 ______ you're an introvert in this situation, it's more natural for you to be quiet and listen.

6 Complete the sentences about you. Give examples using phrases from Ex 5.

- 1 | prefer to ___
- 2 I feel more comfortable __
- 3 I don't really enjoy_

7 4.05 Listen to the whole dialogue again and choose the correct option: A, B or C.

- 1 According to Susan Cain, society ...
 - A treats introverts and extroverts the same way.
 - B doesn't benefit from the abilities of introverts.
 - **C** gives all the best jobs to extroverts.
- 2 Being an introvert means ...
 - A you are shy and avoid meeting people.
 - B you don't enjoy social situations.
 - **C** you need time alone after being with others.
- 3 At summer camp, the other kids complained when Cain ...
 - A wanted to read a book on her own.
 - B joined in with group activities.
 - c adapted her behaviour.
- 4 A typical school classroom encourages ...
 - A students to work together.
 - B better project work.
 - **C** students who prefer to work alone.
- 5 Large businesses often employ people who ...
 - A are quiet and enjoy listening.
 - B talk a lot in group situations.
 - C have the best skills for the job.
- **6** According to psychologists, introverts come up with new ideas when they are ...
 - A working in a group.
 - **B** listening to others.
 - C on their own.
- 8 Your teacher has asked you to research different personality types and present your findings to the rest of the class. In your project group, there are both introverts and extroverts. Write down four ways you could organise your group work to get the best results.

42 Unit 4

1	Replace the <u>underlined</u> phrases with the words and phrases below.	4 My grandfather, Fred, was a policeman and a brilliant footballer, and my dad reallyhim.
	adopted brother-in-law close family family get-together great-grandmother on my dad's side parents-in-law	Later on, my dad and joined the police too. In photos, they have the same friendly smile – my dad definitely his dad.
	Geeta doesn't like her <u>husband's mum and dad</u> – they tend to complain about her cooking!	4 Isla is interviewing her great-grandmother for a school project. Complete the dialogue with words and phrases from the previous exercises.
	2 Every summer we have a big <u>party with all our relations.</u>	from the previous exercises.
	My dad doesn't know who his real parents were – my grandparents <u>brought</u> him <u>to live with them</u> when he was a baby.	
	4 I have 20 cousins who are related to my mum, but only two cousins <u>related to my dad</u> .	
	5 My <u>sister's husband</u> , Gabriele, is Italian and he speaks amazing English.	
	6 I was very close to my mother's grandmother – she lived until she was 97.	Isla Can you tell me something about previous of our family? I'd like to know more
	7 They had a small wedding – with only <u>their parents</u> , <u>siblings and grandparents</u> .	about my ² Gran What do you want to know?
2	Choose the correct alternative.	Isla Tell me about your ³ when you were growing up. How many ⁴ did you have?
	Millennials are the ancestors / generation born between 1981 and 1996.	Gran I had two sisters. My father died when we were little, and my mum ⁵ on her own. Later, she
	2 My cousin Marcus raises money to help sick children – I really look up to him / bring him up.	married again, and I had two ⁶ , George and Michael.
	3 I have six older brothers and sisters – I'm the youngest of	Isla And did you get on with them?
	all my generation / siblings . 4 Ollie's dad left home when he was two, so his mum	Gran Yes, especially George. He was so clever and very
	brought him up / is related to him on her own.	ambitious. I really ⁷ him. In fact, I became a teacher like him!
	5 Siri wants to follow in / take after her sister's footsteps	Isla So did you 8?
	and be a dancer.	Gran Yes, definitely!
	6 The president's ancestors / close family came to the US	Isla Do you remember your real dad?
	from Ireland in the 19th century.	Gran No, but my mother said I 9 him – he had
	7 Did you know Ed and Will look up to / are related to each other? They are cousins.	a very positive attitude to life, and so do I.
	8 Aziz looks up to / takes after his dad – their hair and	Isla What about your best memories? Gran Oh, we used to have these big 10
	eyes are the same colour.	People would bring food and there would be lots of
3	Complete the short texts with the words and phrases below.	singing and dancing. I used to think I was lucky to be 11 so many nice people.
	adopted ancestors brought him up	5 (4) 4.06 PRONUNCIATION Decide if the <u>underlined</u>
	followed in his footsteps generations	sounds in sentences 1–7 are pronounced as /ɔ:/ or /əʊ/.
	get-togethers looked up to on my mum's side	Then listen and check.
	related to siblings stepbrothers takes after	1 bought a new coat.
	1 My brother Chidi is quite a bit older than me. Actually,	2 Maria c <u>augh</u> t a c <u>ol</u> d.
	we're – his mum married my dad.	3 Our hall ceiling is low.
	Family are great fun because all	4 You chose to live on a boot.
	the get on well together - young	5 I saw a beautiful china bowl.

5 How many siblings do you have? __ and find out about who you could ___. I've learned loads about my 6 Which of your parents do you take after? dad's family and now I'm going to research the people

_ and he's interested in

_ will always be his family, but he's

learning more about his real parents. The people who

3 On this site you can look up information about your

curious to know if he has any _____

cousins somewhere.

and old! 2 Will is ___

> 7 **VOCABULARY BOOSTER** Now practise **Types of relatives** vocabulary on page 107.

4 Which town, city or region do your ancestors come from?

6 Call me if you want to go for a walk.

6 Write a sentence to answer each question.

1 How many generations of your family do you know?

3 Whose footsteps would you most like to follow in?

2 Which person in your family do you look up to?

him - he had

1 Match the sentence halves.

- 1 My friends and I agreed ____
- 2 Priyanka's dad warned ____
- 3 My brother admitted ____
- 4 Alice's grandfather advised
- 5 Erin's aunt tried to help her, but Erin
- 6 When they lost the game, Jake's teammates blamed_
- 7 Mia arrived late for dinner and apologised ____
- 8 Liam's parents insisted __
- A him for playing badly.
- B her to study the subjects she finds most interesting.
- C that he should wear a suit to his cousin's wedding.
- **D** to meet at the sports centre after school.
- **E** for making everybody wait.
- **F** her against posting photos of herself online.
- G to listen to her advice.
- **H** breaking my phone screen and apologised.

2 Choose the correct alternative.



- 1 Tom's friends suggested going / to go bowling to celebrate his birthday.
- 2 Ashu's party was so noisy that her neighbours threatened calling / to call the police.
- 3 Nikki lost her purse and Kiara insisted on lending / to lend her some money.
- 4 Molly's teacher congratulated **on winning** / her on winning a school prize.
- 5 When my cousins got festival tickets, they invited **me to go / that I go** with them.
- 6 My sister promised **not to tell** / **not for to tell** anyone that I had failed my exam.
- 7 When my bike was stolen, the police recommended me to post / that I should post pictures of it on social media.
- 8 My dad wanted to leave school at sixteen, but his parents persuaded him to stay / that he should stay.

3	Co	emplete the report	ed speech	sentences	with th	e verbs below	
	2	accuse advise o	onfess o	deny enco	ourage		
	(offer persuade	propose	remind v	warn		
	1	'You borrowed my	iacket!'				
	_	Lori			heri	acket	
	2	'You should study			,	acree.	
	_	Emily's teacher				engineering	
		at university.				_ = =88	
	3	'I didn't cheat in th	ne exam.'				
		Leon	ir	n the exam.			
	4	'I'll help you to tid			2.'		
		Eliza				idy the garder	٦.
	5	'I'm afraid it was m				, 0	
		Badrey		-			
	6	'Don't forget to tal	ke your spo	orts kit to so	chool.'		
		Timo's mum				is sports kit to	school.
	7	'Don't give up you					
		My uncle				_ my studies.	
	8	'We should have a					ation.'
		Mirza's dad	, ,	0		, ,	
		her graduation.			, 0		
	9	'I really need you t	o buy me :	some new t	rainers.'		
		lan	his mum_		_ him s	ome new train	iers.
1	.0	'It isn't safe for you	ı to walk h	ome alone.'			
		Leah's friends		hon	ne alone	2.	
4	Cc	omplete the text w	ith the cor	rect form o	f the ve	rhs in bracket	s
Ċ		ad a big argument					٠.
	ac	cused 1		(me / borro	w) her la	aptop and	
	us	ing it without askir	g her. She	blamed 2_	•		
		ne / delete) a music					
	de	emanded ³		(I / apolo	ogise). I d	don't get upset	t
	ea	sily, and of course otop. She refused ⁵	I denied 4_		/1 1*	_ (touch) her	1
		otop. She refused ^s					
		reatened ⁷					
		r. Finally, her cousi					
		e laptop, but said h					
	9_	1 17					
	10					Carrie, but I w	
	11					that again. I w	
		gry with Jamie too				(him	/ think)
	ca	refully before he ad	cts in futur	e.			
5		omplete the questi					!
		iswers that are tru	-	_			
	1	Have you ever agr	eed or off	ered		(do) somethir	ng and

	Have you ever agreed or offered (do) it?	
2	Has anyone ever encouraged or persuaded you something you didn't want to do?	(do)
3	Have you ever admitted or denied didn't do?	 _ (do) something you

4 Has anyone ever accused you ____ (do) or **blamed** you (do) something you didn't do?

1 What can you remember about the magazine article in the Student's Book? Complete the summary with the words below.

adjusted approached mentalillness observed shepherd trapped

When Marcos Rodríguez Pantoja was seven, the old

________he worked with in the mountains
disappeared one day. Rodríguez said later that he

_________the animals and birds to learn which foods
were safe to eat. After twelve years, he was found by police
officers, but it was a long time before he 3________to
living in society again. Later, Rodríguez was 4_______
by scientists who asked him many questions about his
experience. Rodríguez claimed that he had made friends
with the animals, who looked after him. This wasn't a sign
of 5_______, but a way for him to cope with being

6_______ in the mountains alone for so long.

- 2 Look at the photo and the title of the article. Think about the questions.
 - 1 Do you know anyone who is a twin?
 - 2 In what ways is having a twin different from having an 'ordinary' sister or brother?
 - 3 How might twins feel if they were separated?
- 3 **4.07** Read the article quickly and choose the best summary. The article is about ...
 - 1 a woman who always believed she had a twin sister and set out to find her.
 - 2 a woman who learned through social media that she had a twin sister.
 - 3 two women who each took a DNA test and then discovered they had a twin sister.

STRATEGY Understanding the order of events in a text

When reading a text which describes past events, it's important to realise that events in the text might not be presented in chronological order. To understand which event happened first, pay attention to linking phrases (*before*, *after*, *while*, *as soon as*, etc.), time references and dates.

4 Read the strategy above. Then number the events in the order they happened.

Anaïs . . .

met Sam in London. ____
learned she and Sam were born on the same day. ____
started to study fashion in London. ____
has been in regular contact with Sam. ____
chatted with Sam on video. ____
watched a video on YouTube. ____
and Sam starred in a film about their life. ____
and Sam got the DNA test results. ____
was born in South Korea. ____
and Sam decided to meet in London. ____
and Sam took a DNA test. ____

- 5 Identify the words and phrases in the text that helped you to do Ex 4.
- 6 Think about the questions.
 - 1 Do you think Anais did the right thing when she contacted Sam?
 - 2 Why do you think Anaïs was nervous before the meeting in London?

Twins who met after 25 years apart

As soon as Anaïs walked into the room and saw Sam for the first time in 25 years, she knew they were sisters. Later the same day, their DNA test results confirmed that they were identical twins. And in 2015, this incredible story of the twins who were separated at birth was made into a film documentary.

But how did it all start? Anaïs Bordier was born in Busan, South Korea, on 19 November 1987. She was adopted by French parents and was brought up in France. Anaïs knew she looked different, but had a very happy childhood.

In 2012, Anaïs moved to London to study fashion. One day, a friend showed her a video of a girl on YouTube who looked exactly like her! She looked for the girl's name, but it wasn't there. She watched the video several times, but didn't know how to contact her.

A month later, her friend told her that she had seen a film trailer and had also found out that the girl's name was Sam. Anaïs searched for more information about her online. When she read it, she was amazed. Sam was also born in Busan, on the same day as Anaïs!

Anaïs contacted Sam through social media and introduced herself. Then they had their first video chat and realized that they were so similar – they

even laughed the same way. After that, they decided to meet in person in London.

When Sam started making a documentary about them, Dr Nancy Segal, a specialist in twin studies at California State University, contacted them. She offered them a DNA test to prove they were related. Before they met up, they took the test together on Skype.

Since they met up for the first time in London, the two sisters have been texting every day. They share so many things in common from both hating cooked carrots to





4.7 GLOBAL SKILLS

- 1 Match a verb from A and a word or phrase from B to make tips on how to make a good first impression.
 - A be (x2) check dress listen look make put smile watch
 - **B** actively confident eye contact in the right way on time politely at people positive your body language your language your phone away

- 2 4.08 Listen to a careers adviser talking about some of the tips in Ex 1. Which ones does she mention?
- 3 4.08 Listen again. According to the speaker, what shows someone that ...
 - 1 you are listening to them?
 - 2 you are interested in them?
 - 3 you are happy to meet them?
 - 4 you are over-confident?
 - **5** you are paying attention?
- **4** Read the comments from five students about making a good impression in a job interview. Match the comments to the tips in Ex 1.

= Forum

Comments (5)

- Mila You want to come across as someone who looks on the bright side. Smile, and look at people when they're talking. Talk about your successes, not your failures. And never, ever say anything negative about your current job or your colleagues.
- Josh It's important to avoid using slang phrases, or big words just to impress the interviewers. If you're nervous, make sure you don't speak too quickly, or too loudly. Just speak clearly, and say what you mean as simply as possible.
- Sofia Before you say anything, people will have started to judge you by how you look. Your clothes don't need to be expensive, but they should be smart, clean and tidy. That shows the interviewers you have a professional attitude.
- Rory I arrived a few minutes late for my first interview. It wasn't my fault, but I knew I had to perform really well to make up for it. The problem was, I think they'd already decided I was unreliable. I didn't get the job. I won't make that mistake again.
- Pria It should be in your bag or in your pocket.

 Just holding it in your hand suggests that you aren't paying attention to the interviewer. And if it vibrates or rings during the interview, this makes you look bad. So switch it off too.

- **5** Read the tips in Ex 4 again. Decide if you agree with them. Are there any you disagree with?
- 6 4.09 Listen to three friends discussing two possible new singers for their band. For each singer, note down their good points and their bad points. Use words and phrases from Ex 1.

	Good	Bad
Layla	body language	
Stefan		

- 7 4.09 Listen again and choose the correct answer: A or B.
 - 1 The two candidates are both good singers, so what's important is whether they ...
 - A fit in with the band.
 - B dress in the right way.
 - 2 Layla's body language indicated that she was ...
 - A lacking in confidence.
 - B relaxed and confident.
 - 3 Oli says Layla seems kind because ...
 - A she was positive about people she knew.
 - **B** she paid attention and asked questions.
 - 4 The fact that Layla was late for her interview ...
 - A was a big problem for everyone.
 - B wasn't a serious problem.
 - 5 Lucia thought Stefan seemed too confident because ...
 - A he asked lots of questions about the band.
 - **B** he was more interested in talking about himself.
 - **6** Ezra thought Stefan's body language was negative because ...
 - A he hardly ever smiled or made eye contact.
 - **B** he kept looking at his phone.
- 8 MEDIATION A friend has contacted you to say they are going to a big event with their parents. They will meet a lot of their parents' friends and colleagues, so they want to make a good impression. Choose the three things you think are most important for your friend to remember and write a brief summary of them.

46 Unit 4

1	4) 4.10	Read and listen to two dialogues. Ignore the
	gaps. Fo	r each dialogue, note down

- 1 the topic that Jamie / Mila introduces.
- 2 the topic that Noah / Elise changes to.
- 3 when Jamie / Mila continues the first topic.
- 4 the topic that Jamie / Mila changes to.

Dialogue 1

Jamie ¹______? Aidan's left home!

Noah What? No way!

Jamie It's true. He told me his mum had accused him of stealing money. He denied it but his stepfather threatened to kick him out. So he's staying at Ben's.

Noah Poor Aidan! 2______, it's Laura's birthday party on Friday. I know Ben's going. What about you?

Jamie Yes, I think so. 3_______, Aidan had to leave home. He admitted that he wants to go back . . .

Noah What did you say?

Jamie I persuaded him to call his mum and explain how he feels. I'll talk to him again at school.

4______school, I should go or I'll

be late.

Dialogue 2

Mila Hey, Elise. ⁵______I'm doing this Saturday.

Elise Surprise me!

Mila One of my teachers recommended going to a recruitment day. I asked my parents what they thought and they encouraged me to go.

Elise That's great, Mila! 6_______, did you get Ms Lewis's message about the class meeting? It starts at 4.00 p.m.this week and she reminded everyone to be on time.

Mila Right, thanks for telling me. So ...

7_____. Mr Walker advised me to dress smartly and not to wear my old jeans ...

Elise And warned you not to talk too much, I expect!

Mila Ha ha! Anyway, ⁸______, can I borrow your leather briefcase? I want to make a good impression.

recruitment (*n*) the process of finding new employees for a business

2 **4.10** Complete the dialogues with the phrases below. Then listen again and check.

anyway, as I was saying back to what I was saying before I forget guess what oh, by the way speaking of that reminds me you'll never believe what

3 Put the phrases from Ex 2 into the correct category. Then add as many words and phrases as you can to each category.

Starting a new topic	Changing the topic	Continuing the topic	

4	Match the	phrases	below to	the correct	category in	Ex3
---	-----------	---------	----------	-------------	-------------	-----

Funny you should mention that ... Have you heard ...?
I nearly forgot to tell you ... In any case, ...
Listen to this! Now that you mention it, ... Where was I?

5 Complete the dialogues with phrases from Ex 1–4. More than one answer may be possible.

1	Marc said his dad has a new job –
so they're moving.	
	new jobs, I were working in the supermarket.
Yes, just at weekends. unhappy because he	has to change schools.
4	what happened at Mika's party?
She invited me, but I d	
Me neither – I was pla	· ·
	, we have a big game on Saturday.
Are you playing?	, we have a signame on outerady.
	, some friends of
	nd – they turned up and played all
7	I've got a place at university next
year.	5
That's great. 8	– I've got a job
	Do you have any advice?
Yes, be on time and be	
I'm going to study bio	

STRATEGY Using reported speech

When you're saying what someone else told you, remember to use reported speech. Try to use a variety of reporting verbs like *explained*, *denied*, *admitted*, etc.

- **6** Read the strategy above. <u>Underline</u> all the verbs for reporting speech in the dialogues in Ex 1.
- 7 You are going to write a script of a similar dialogue. Choose one of the topics below or use your own ideas.
 - · what happened at a music festival last weekend
 - something a friend did that made you angry / happy
 - a surprising hobby someone you know has taken up

8 Plan your work.

- 1 Decide which useful phrases you will use. Try to use at least two phrases for each function.
- 2 Include a variety of reporting verbs.
- 3 Use the structure below.

Speaker 1: Introduce a new topic.

Speaker 2: Respond, then change topic.

Speaker 1: Respond, then continue the original topic.

Speaker 2: Respond and introduce a new topic.

Speaker 1: Respond, then change topic.

Speaker 2: Respond, then continue the original topic.

9 Write your script. When you have finished, check that you

- used a variety of phrases to start, change and continue a topic.
- included a variety of reporting verbs.

- 1 Think about a family member or friend that you look up to. Why do you enjoy spending time with them? Think of three adjectives to describe ...
 - their appearance.
 - · their personality.
- 2 Read Omar's description of her grandad and complete the paragraph plan with the information below.
 - 1 what they are like as a person
 - 2 who the person is and the writer's relationship to them
 - 3 why the writer enjoys spending time with them
 - 4 what they looked like in the past
 - 5 what they look like now

Paragraph E:

Paragraph A:		
Paragraph B:		
Paragraph C:	101 11 1 2 1 1 2 L My 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	
Paragraph D:		

Recently, my mum showed me a photo of my grandad as a young man. He's 80 years old now and is well known in our town, as he used to be the mayor. I'm very close to my grandad, and he has always been a really important person in my life.



- From the photo, you can see that when he was young, he was extremely handsome. He's looking straight at the camera, and he has short dark hair and bright blue eyes. He's standing up straight so he looks fairly tall. He's wearing a suit and tie, and he looks incredibly stylish.
- O Now his hair is grey, but his eyes are still very blue. He cares about how he looks, so he's always well dressed. He was sporty when he was younger and he's still quite slim because he walks every day to keep fit.
- My grandad's someone I look up to as a role model.

 He's one of the most easy-going and relaxed people
 I know. He's rather modest and doesn't like talking
 about himself, but he's extremely sociable and
 generous with his time. He has a very positive attitude
 to life, and as far as I can tell, he's completely happy.
- (E) What do I like most about spending time with him? Maybe it's the fact that I can talk to him about anything and he always listens.

As a grandad, he's absolutely perfect. It's totally impossible to imagine my life without him!



- **3** Find as many adjectives as you can in the text that describe Amy's grandad's ...
 - 1 general appearance.
 - 2 height and build.
 - 3 hair and face.
 - 4 personality.
- 4 Complete the description with the adjectives below.

attractive competitive curly green hard-working

modest	red	sporty	stylish	tall	well dressed
My aunt Ro			n's young m. She's		er. She's quite !:
she plays h	nockey	and voll	eyball ar	id is ex	ctremely
3	(she hates	losing)!	She's v	very 4
so gets qu	ite em	barrasse	d when p	eople	tell her that she's
beautiful -	thou	gh she is	really 5_		She has long
6	r	air that's	quite 7_		and amazing
8	∈	yes. She	s a docto	rand	I look up to her
because s	he's so	9	a	nd det	termined to help
other peop always ¹⁰ _			sn't at wo she likes		olaying sport, she's k ¹¹
and has so	me al	osolutely	gorgeou	s cloth	es.

STRATEGY Using modifying adverbs

To make your writing more interesting, use adverbs to modify and strengthen the meaning of the adjectives.

Here are some common modifying adverbs: absolutely completely extremely fairly incredibly quite rather really totally very

- **5** Read the strategy above. Look at the adverbs in **bold** in the text. Do the adverbs in sentences 1–8 below modify (*M*) or strengthen (*S*) the adjective?
 - 1 My brother isn't fat, but he's rather overweight. ___
 - 2 Anya's hair isn't at all wavy it's completely straight. ___
 - 3 You are incredibly late! We've missed the whole movie! ____
 - 4 I can't work out this puzzle it's totally impossible. ___
 - **5** Lisa is 29, which is fairly young to be a professor. ___
 - 6 Hari's extremely ambitious he's determined to go to the best university. ____
 - 7 Javier's quite shy, though he's talkative with close friends. ____
 - 8 That necklace is absolutely gorgeous it must have cost a lot of money. ____
 - 9 Simran is an excellent basketball player. He's really tall about 1.95m. ___
- **6** You are going to write a description of someone in your family or a person you enjoy being with. Use your ideas from Ex 1, or think of a different person.
- **7** Plan your work. Use the paragraph structure in Ex 2. Think about ...
 - · what information you will include in each paragraph.
 - which adjectives and modifying adverbs you will use.
- 8 Write your description.
- 9 CHECK YOUR WORK Did you ...
 - say who they are and why you enjoy being with them?
 - describe their appearance and personality?
 - include modifying adverbs?
 - check your spelling, grammar and punctuation?

G	ra	m	m	21
u	ıα			aı

Gra	ammar	8 Amelie wants to succeed at everything she does – she's
	Vrite the second sentence in reported speech using the	extremely A sociable B modest C ambitious
	vords in brackets.	9 Don doesn't care about others – he's incredibly
1	'I've been to the gym every day this week.'	
	(Tamsin / tell / me)	A selfish B kind C shy
2	'Will you be visiting your grandparents this weekend?' (Ebba / ask)	4 Complete the sentences with the words and phrases below.
3	'You're going to start learning Chinese next term.' (our teacher / tell / us)	adopted ancestors close family footsteps great-grandfather siblings 1 have three – two sisters and a
		brother.
4	'How have you been feeling these last few days?' (the doctor / ask / me)	2 My dad's grandfather, my, died last year.
5	'Can you tell me where you've been this afternoon?'	 Zoe's brother is a doctor – she plans to follow in his They wanted a quiet wedding, so they only invited
	(my dad / ask / me)	They wanted a quiet wedding, so they only invited
6	'I think you should try to have a more positive attitude.' (Anya / tell / Pavel)	5 Alberto has always known he was, but he didn't meet his real mother until he was eighteen.
		Cumulative review
	complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs	5 Complete the text with one word in each gap.
	n brackets. Add any other necessary words.	My parents moved to the UK from India when I was a baby.
	Ashok offered (collect) my prescription.	I really ¹ up to my parents – they have such a ² attitude to life. They have four children and
	Our teacher demanded (we / turn off) our phones.	a family business, which has been very successful because they are both so 3
3	Bako denied (try) to cheat in the exam.	When I was ⁴ young, my parents ⁵
4	Why did you accuse (me / lose) your	me I had been born in India. As I got older, they encouraged me to ⁶ questions about India and their familie
7	sweater?	After I left school, my dad suggested that I 7
5	The company admitted (make) a	visit India. I was really interested to see where my
	mistake and apologised (take) my	8 came from, and I decided to go. Last
	payment twice.	summer, I visited the village in India where my mum was 9 up. There were three 10 of my
Vo	cabulary	family still living there, and they insisted 11
3 C	Choose the correct answer: A, B or C.	organising a big get-together for me. I'm not at all
	Renata has done a lot in her life, but she rarely talks about	, so it was easy to talk to them, although
	her achievements – she's very	they didn't all speak English. I even met my mum's mother.
	A ambitious B modest C determined	It's obvious that my mum takes ¹³ her – they look really similar.
2	Katya is great at sport, but she lacks in her abilities.	It has been amazing to find all these people I'm 14 to. They were so 15 with their
	A a positive attitude B the bright side C confidence	hospitality and made me feel very welcome.
3	My uncle David is one of the most people I know – he would do anything for anyone.	REFLECT Think about the following questions.
	A generous B selfish C talkative	1 Which lesson in this unit did you enjoy the most? Why?
4	l always do what I decide to do – I'm very	2 Which of the grammar points did you find most difficult?
5	A shy B modest C determined Lena isn't – she doesn't enjoy parties.	3 How can you practice using reported verbs in your
	A easy-going B sociable C shy	speech? 4 What things did you find most difficult when you wrote
6	Marco always has something to say – he is extremely	your description of a family member?
	A modest B shy C talkative	
7	My grandmother doesn't often get stressed – she's fairly	
	A pariable B promise C to the time	
	A sociable B easy-going C hard-working	

Listening

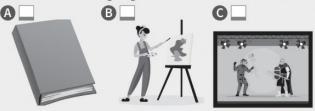
EXAM STRATEGY

When you do a multiple-choice listening task, use the first time you listen to decide if any options are definitely wrong. Then use the second listening to focus on the remaining options.

- 1 4.11 Read the strategy above. Then look at the first question in the exam task in Ex 2. Listen to the first dialogue once and decide which option is incorrect.
- 2 4.11 For each question, listen and choose the correct answer: A, B or C.



2 What is the woman going to tell the audience about?



3 How did the boy injure his leg?



4 What is the girl going to do at the weekend?



5 When are the friends going to the cinema?



Use of English

EXAM STRATEGY

When you do a cloze task, read each sentence carefully and decide what sort of word is missing: a noun, pronoun, verb, article, preposition, etc. Then think carefully about the exact form of the word, for example, is the meaning positive or negative? Is it singular or plural? What verb tense is needed?

- 3 Read the strategy above and decide what sort of word is missing from each gap in the task in Ex 4. When you finish the task, check your answers by thinking about the exact form of the word.
- 4 Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each gap 1–10. Use only one word in each gap.

Did you know that one of ¹ most commor reasons why people visit their doctor is back pain? Man of us will suffer from it at some point in ²
of us will suffer from it at some point in ²
lives – whether it's a mild ache or a sharp pain. Sitting a a desk ³ several hours each day is one of
the main causes of back problems. That's 4
it's important to have a good quality chair ⁵
supports your lower back and makes you sit up straight
Spending too much time looking at your phone with yo
head down isn't good, either! Regular physical activity
is the best way ⁶ keep your back strong. A
healthy diet is important too, as extra weight, particular
around the stomach, can lead to back problems. A
healthy diet can also help to keep your bones strong -
foods like fish, eggs, milk, cheese and green vegetable are all good for this. You may ⁷ realise it,
but anxiety can have a negative effect on your back, so
try to reduce it ⁸ doing yoga, meditation
breathing exercises. A good night's sleep is a great way
of reducing anxiety too, but think about the position yo
sleep in. Sleeping on your side ⁹ probabl
best, but if you sleep on your back, try putting somethi soft under your legs to raise ¹⁰ slightly.
Sleeping on your front can be especially bad for your
back – again, putting something soft under your stoma
to support your back can help.

Reading

EXAM STRATEGY

In a reading task with short texts, think about their context, purpose and audience.

5 Read the strategy above, then look at the texts in the exam task in Ex 6. Decide where you might see each one, why it was written and who it is for.

50 Unit 4 6 Read the texts below. For each question, choose the correct answer.

Are you looking for a way to reduce stress? Do you want to sleep better at night? Do you feel that you don't have enough energy to get through the day? You don't always need to go to a doctor or chemist to find the answers. Why not try our online store first? We offer a range of natural treatments, from high-quality vitamins to healthy food and drinks. We can also give advice about how to keep your heart, teeth and skin in the best condition. It's easy to chat online to one of our experts. Our business has over ten years of experience in natural health, so you can be confident that we'll give you the best advice.

- 1 According to the advert, this store ...
 - A was started by a health worker.
 - **B** was one of the first online health companies.
 - **C** sells a variety of goods.
 - **D** is a relaxing place to shop.

Hotel Sunshine

My most recent trip took me to the beautiful country of Italy, where I stayed at the Hotel Sunshine. (Unfortunately, there were very few sunny days while I was there!) However, the hotel itself was as good as I'd hoped it would be, and in many ways it was better. My room had a breathtaking view of the coast (in good weather, the scenery must be even more gorgeous). That was definitely what made the biggest impression on me. The hotel had a lovely garden for guests to enjoy as well. I also liked the idea that they could arrange tours of the local area, including boat trips, although I didn't actually go on one.

- 2 What did the reviewer like most about his visit to Italy?
 - A The fact that the weather matched the hotel's name.
 - **B** The trip that the hotel organised for him.
 - C The time he spent in the garden with other people.
 - **D** The view he could see from his hotel room.

Hi Lucia, I think I told you last week that my stepbrother is coming to stay next weekend. Well, he's just told me he'll be here earlier than expected. I promised to pick him up from the bus station, so I won't be able to meet you for lunch on Saturday. I've suggested going to the cinema in the evening, though. Would you like to come? Fer

- 3 What is the purpose of Fer's text to Lucia?
 - A to cancel an event
 - B to change an arrangement they'd made
 - C to invite her to the cinema
 - **D** to remind her that her stepbrother is visiting

- -

口命口面

Hi, my name's Ben. I was born in Scotland, but I've lived in London for five years. I'm working in a clothes shop at the moment, but I want to train to be a teacher next year – I really like working with children. This summer, I'm going travelling all over Europe. I love being outside and I'm really interested in the environment. I'm a member of a hiking group and we visit some amazing places. I hope I can come and visit you. I'm sure you can tell me about all the best destinations to visit in your country! I'd describe my personality as easy-going but ambitious. I tend to have a positive attitude and try to look on the bright side.

- 4 Ben has written this message to ...
 - A explain why he likes travelling.
 - **B** introduce himself to someone.
 - **C** make a recommendation to someone.
 - **D** apply for a job as a teacher.

Speaking

EXAM STRATEGY

In a role-play task, make sure that you and your partner cover all the points that you are asked to discuss.

- 7 Read the strategy above. Then look at the exam task in Ex 8. Think of the benefits for mental and physical health for each point before you start your discussion.
- 8 Work in pairs. You are going to talk together about the ideas below. Imagine the following situation. You want to do something to improve your mental and physical health. Talk to your English-speaking friend about the benefits of each of the ideas below.
 - joining a gym
 - · doing a 'healthy diet' cookery class
 - going running with friends

Writing

EXAM STRATEGY

When you write an article, you often need to use more than one tense. Read the task carefully to identify which tenses you need to use.

- **9** Read the strategy above and the task in Ex 10. Which tenses do you need to use in your article?
- 10 You see this advert in an English-language magazine.

We are looking for articles about a famous person you admire. Tell us about someone important to you. Describe his or her personality. What have they done to become famous? Why do you admire this person?

We'll publish the best articles next month.

Write your article.



- **1 a** What can you remember about the vlog? Choose the correct answer: A or B.
 - 1 Alicia is unhappy because ...
 - A her chocolates cost more than she expected.
 - B she doesn't understand economics.
 - 2 Around 70% of the world's cocoa is ...
 - A made into chocolate.
 - **B** produced in West Africa.
 - 3 The price of chocolate will go up if ...
 - A the supply of cocoa falls.
 - B consumer demand for cocoa falls.
 - 4 Chocolate can also become more expensive if ...
 - A the price of oil goes up.
 - B oil production goes up.
 - **5** Chocolate is traded in ...
 - A many different local currencies.
 - B US dollars.
 - **b 5.01** Watch or listen again and check.
- 2 Choose the correct alternative.
 - 1 The people who buy products and services are consumers / producers.
 - 2 When **demand** / **trade** for something is greater than supply, the price goes up.
 - 3 Products are transported by ship for international importing / distribution.
 - 4 A fire in one of our factories destroyed all the **stock** / **supply**.
 - 5 Products may not be the same price in different markets / trade.
 - 6 All our games consoles are exported / packaged carefully so they don't get broken.
- **3** Complete the facts with the correct form of the words in brackets.
 - How many workers are there on this ______ line? (produce)
 People in Norway _____ more pizza than in the US. (consumption)
 Brazil is the world's leading _____ of coffee. (export)
 Illegal _____ who kill elephants must be stopped. (trade)
 This supermarket _____ a lot of cheese from France. (import)
 We need to send these back to the _____ today.

4 • 5.02 Two students are discussing their geography homework. Complete the dialogue with the words below. Then listen and check.

demand consumers distributed export goods importers markets producers retailers stock supply trade

- A Buying and selling between countries is called 1_______, right?
- **B** Yes. In some countries there are companies that manufacture ²______ like phones or coffee. Those companies are the ³_____. And people in other countries want to buy those things.
- A And these people are 4_____
- B Correct. So the companies send their products abroad. In other words, they ⁵______ them.
- A And the countries or the ⁶______ that buy them are the ⁷
- B Exactly. And the price they have to pay for something depends on two things. Firstly, how many people want to buy it the ⁸______. And secondly, how much of it is available for sale the ⁹______.
- A Also, more people are using online ¹⁰_____ like Amazon. Many of their products are cheaper because they have huge buildings where they keep their ¹¹_____. And items are ¹²_____ around the country by lorry.
- **5 REAL** ENGLISH Complete the dialogue with the phrases below.

Cheers, mate! For sure! Hands off! I get the picture. What a rip-off!

- A That's nice. Can I have a look?
- B ¹______ That's my new iPhone. It cost 500 euros.
- A How much? 2_____
- B Not really anyway, my dad's paying for it.
- A OK 3
- **B** Look, you can have my old phone if you want.
- A Really? Do you mean that?
- A Great. 5_____
- 6 **VOCABULARY BOOSTER** Now practise **international trade** vocabulary on page 108.

52 Unit 5

(manufacture)

1 • 5.03 Listen to a dialogue between a student, Dina, and her teacher, Ms Craig. Complete the dialogue with the correct modal verbs.



B Great idea! But you 1_ talk to the head teacher first. You 2_ _____ start a business at school without permission. A Will people buy them, though? B Of course! You 3_ _____ worry about that – everyone likes cake. **A** What about advertising? B Yes, you definitely ⁴______ advertise. But remember, you ⁵_____ sell cakes every day. You _____ start with just one cake sale a week. A The cakes have to be really good.

A I'd really like to start a business baking and selling cakes

- **B** Yes, and you ⁷_____ make sure you follow the rules about health and safety.
- A I'm not sure I can do this ...

at school.

- B Of course you can! You 8___ ____ believe in yourself.
- 2 Match 1-8 in Ex 1 to explanations A-E.
 - A It isn't necessary to do this. _____
 - **B** It's prohibited to do this. ____
 - C It's a good idea to do this. _____
 - **D** It's obligatory to do this. _____
 - E It's necessary to do this. ____
- 3 Choose the correct alternative.
 - 1 Online retailers **shouldn't / need to** have a reliable distribution system.
 - 2 If demand for our product starts to go up, we don't have to / ought to increase manufacturing.
 - 3 Companies **needn't / mustn't** pay their workers less than the minimum wage.
 - 4 Consumers know our products, so we don't have to / mustn't do a lot of marketing.
 - 5 You have to / should get the correct documents before you can export these goods.
 - 6 We don't have to / need to produce more goods to meet the increased demand from consumers!
 - 7 If you have a good idea for a business, you **don't have to / shouldn't** listen to negative comments from other people.

4 Complete the sentences with the modal verbs below and the prompts in brackets. Use each modal verb once only.

don't have to have to must mustn't need to should _____ hand in our essays on Friday. (It's obligatory.) 2 Students ____ ___ talk in the library. (It's prohibited.) _____ ask your parents before you 3 You_____ invite your friends home. (It's a good idea.) 4 Kieran _____ get fitter if he wants to play football for the school. (It's necessary.) ____ wear a helmet when 5 All students _____ they cycle to school. (It's really important.) 6 We ______ to get the bus – my dad will drive us home. (It isn't necessary.)

5 Marco wants to find a job working abroad for a year. Read his online post and the comments giving advice. Complete the comments with the modal verbs below. More than one answer may be possible.

don't have to have to must mustn't need to needn't ought to should

BLOG



I really want to work abroad for a year after I leave school. Has anyone else done this? I'd really appreciate your advice. Thanks.

Reply to Marco

🗩 David You ¹	think carefully
about why you want to	o do it – for a break, to earn
money or to gain new	experiences? For some jobs, you
² fi	ll in your applications several
months in advance, an	d you may ³
go for an interview.	

™ Mila If your family and friends are negative about your plans, remember that you ⁴_ listen to them. I strongly advise you to trust your own feelings – you ⁵_____ _ believe in yourself and your ability to make the right decisions for you. You 6 be afraid to take risks or look for new experiences.

Natalie Health is something to think about. For example, if you wear glasses or you take a special medicine, it's a good idea to take your prescription with you. If the country you're visiting has free healthcare, then you 8_ worry about getting travel health insurance. But I think you 9 check before you go, just to be safe.

6 An exchange student is coming to your school for a year. Write at least three sentences giving advice and explaining some of the things they must and mustn't do, have to and don't have to do, need to and needn't do and should or ought to do.

5.3 LISTENING

1 What can you remember about the lecture in the Student's Book? Complete the facts with the words below.

benefits consequences contributed development expand growth influence

1 The _______ in trade along the Silk Roads began over 2,000 years ago; it brought many _______ to the people of Europe and the Middle East.

2 The ______ of printing technology in the 14th and 15th centuries ______ to a huge growth in education and science.

3 The invention of the magnetic compass had massive _____ for European traders. They were able to increase their _____ in Africa, and ____ their activities across the Atlantic Ocean to America.

2 You are going to listen to part of a podcast about the global trade in waste. Look at the photos and think about the questions below.

1 What happens to plastic when we don't need it anymore?

2 How can people or countries make money from waste?

3 What ways can you think of to reduce plastic waste?



3 • 5.04 Listen to the podcast. Which information is not included?

A why there is a global market in waste

- B which countries export and import waste
- C what products are made from recycled waste
- D what China decided to do a few years ago
- E why China's action caused a problem
- F how the problem could be solved

STRATEGY Listening for specific information

When you need to listen for specific information, it is a good idea to identify the information you need. To do this, first listen to the entire recording to understand the gist of each part. Then before you listen again, read the questions carefully and the type of information you will need, e.g. a number, place, name, etc.

- 4 Read the strategy above. Then read the questions in Ex 5. Note down the type of information you need to listen for (a number, a name, a place, a fact).
- 5 5.04 Listen to the podcast again. Choose the correct answer: A, B, C or D.
 - 1 How is recycling described? As ...
 - A a waste of time.
 - B a global business.
 - C an environmental problem.
 - D an economic issue.
 - 2 What percentage of plastic waste is recycled worldwide?
 - A 12%
 - B 40%
 - C 30%
 - D 9%
 - **3** Which country has not increased its export of plastic?
 - A Japan
 - **B** China
 - C the UK
 - D the US
 - 4 Roughly how many tonnes of waste did one country accept in 2016?
 - A 7 million
 - B 14 million
 - C 18 million
 - **D** 30 million
 - **5** What are some Malaysian importers doing with the waste they receive?
 - A burning it
 - B selling it
 - C returning it
 - D banning it
 - 6 What are some consumers asking for?
 - A less plastic production
 - B different product packaging
 - **C** stopping the export of waste
 - **D** international recycling
- 6 MEDIATION You listened to the podcast as research for a group project. Write a list of three or four of the main facts about plastic waste recycling for the other people in your group. Think about the problems and solutions and the countries involved.

54 Unit 5

L Co	omplete the definitions with the words and phrases below.
1	ATM bank statement debt deposit interest rate lender(s) loan savings goal tax(es) wage(s)
1	A is an amount of money you
	borrow from someone, which you have to pay back.
2	The money you get from a job is your
3	A machine you can use to take out money is called a(n)
4	An amount of money that you add to your account is a
5	A(n) gives you information about
	the money in your account.
6	is the money a person or company
7	must pay to the government each year. A(n) is the amount of money you
1	owe someone.
8	
	spend in the future is your
9	are people or businesses who give
	you money that you have to pay back later.
10	The is the amount of money the
	bank charges you for borrowing money.
2 C	omplete the sentences with words and phrases from Ex 1.
1	I'd like to open a bank account – how much do I need for
	my first?
2	Fatima never spends any money – she has a lot of
3	We need some cash – is there a(n)
9	near here?
4	Many students get a to pay for
	their studies.
5	Everyone has to pay – it's the law.
6	I know how much money is in my account because I get a every month.
7	Soraya doesn't earn much from her job – her employer pays her a very low
8	If you want to borrow money, you need to compare the of different banks.
9	They borrowed money to start their business – now they have a huge
10	If you're having trouble paying back money
	you've borrowed, you must talk to your money
) CI	hoose the correct alternative.
	The bank will check / credit the interest from your
1	THE DAILY WILL CHECK / CLEUIL THE HITCHEST HOTH VOUL
2	savings to your account every month.
2	

- - from an ATM abroad.
 - 4 You must make / take out a deposit before you can start using your account.
 - 5 Go online to find out which bank charges / withdraws the lowest interest rate.
 - 6 When you spend more money than you have, it's easy to get into / take out debt.

- 7 Can I earn / make a payment from my account online?
- 8 Paola earns / takes a good wage from her cleaning business.
- 9 You need to show some identification before you can get into / open a bank account.
- 4 Complete the online chat with verbs from Ex 3.

Live chat		×
	o ¹ a bank ou. How do I do that?	
	Banker Just complete the application form. Do you want to ² a deposit today?	
-	a wage from my d I have 500 euros in savings.	
can ⁴ _ abroac	er No problem. We'll send you a card so that you cash from any ATM in the UK, or d. And if you want to ⁵ a payment neone, the easiest way is through online banking.	
Kaya Can I 6	my bank statements online?	
Ва	nker Yes, we don't send out paper ones anymore	е.
Kaya Great. Wh	hat other services do you offer?	
	you want to buy something expensive, like a new a bike, you can take out a loan. At the moment, w an interest rate of between 3% and 6%.	
Kaya I don't wa	ant to borrow money and ⁸ debt.	
Banke and w	er OK. We also pay you interest on your savings, to 9 it to your account every month	h.

5 Complete the text with the correct form of words from the previous exercises.

	Home	About the charity	How it works	Help us
people i	n devel es who, er oper	until recently, ned a She had		
from the	⁴	paid for everyth /. Suddenly, a yea	she earned	working in a
buy exp	ensive i	medicine for one ney from a mone	of her child	
		ery high ⁶		Once Prisha rder, but luckily,
provide	d her wi	able. A charity ca th a low-interest a business. She ⁹		licrofinance
enough her busi	money ness is	to pay back who very successful.		orrowed, and
taxes, 11 12 other we				en employs two

6 VOCABULARY BOOSTER Now practise Saving up vocabulary on page 108.

		M	the past and the present.
1	Ма	tch	1–9 in the dialogue to A–F.
			Did you read this? It says the Bank of England has
			lost £50 billion in cash.
	1	Vita	What? You ¹ must be kidding.
	Da	rius	No, really. It says they don't know where the cash is.
	1	Vita	£50 billion? That ² can't be true.
	Da	rius	I suppose they ³ might have got that wrong.
	1	Vita	Let's hope so. If it really is missing, that ⁴ could
			create problems for the whole economy!
	Da	rius	They think some of it ⁵ might be in people's homes.
			And they say criminals ⁶ could have used some of it
			to commit crimes or avoid paying tax.
	ľ	Vita	So it ⁷ might not even be in the country? I just don't
			believe it – the Bank of England ⁸ can't have lost that much cash.
	Da	rius	Someone ⁹ must have made a mistake!
			eaker
			ertain this is true now
			ertain this was true in the past
			ks it's possible this is true now
			ks it's possible this was true in the past
			ertain this is not true now
	F	is ce	ertain this was not true in the past
2	Ch	oos	e the correct alternative.
	1	ΑΙ	see Ana's got a new smartphone.
		ВΙ	know. It can't have / must have cost a lot of money.
	2	A I	just got a text saying I've won 1,000 euros.
		B D	on't click on the link – it could be / could have been
			scam.
			Where's Max? I thought he was meeting us here at six.
			le might forget / might have forgotten.
	4		We missed the last bus, so we had to walk all the way
			ome.
			hat's nearly 10 km. You might be / must be dead tired
			ly bank statement says I'm £100 in debt.
			hat can't be / mustn't be right – you had £200 in
			here last week.
			o you have any plans for the weekend?
			might go / must go camping with my brother.
	7		ou can't have / could have finished your homework
			lready!
			es, I have – I'm a really fast worker.
			fell off my bike this morning.
			c's lucky you were wearing a helmet, or you could be ,
			ould have been badly hurt.
3			e the sentences with the correct form of can't, could or must.
		_	certain Bruno's brother is over there.'
	-	1111	certain braile a brother is over there.

2 'It isn't possible the bank has closed yet.'

3 'It's possible Lena knows your cousin.'

4 'It's possible you saw me in town yesterday.'

_				
_				
5	ʻlt	isn't possible the ATM	1 is empt	ry again.'
6	' '	n certain Ceren's dad	sent he	r the money.'
7	ʻlt	's possible you left yo	ur phon	e on the bus.'
8	ʻlt	's possible this saving	s accour	nt is the best one.'
		plete the text about ι		thefts. Choose the
		ect answer: A, B, C or 08, thieves stole hund		tonnes of white sand
				elieve that hotel owners
		the thieves to steal it.		
				vever, it 3 a long time
				d fill 500 trucks. A police
		er said, The thieves 🗓 use all that sand is wo		sed they got away with it
				stolen from a building ir
				asy to move – it was 3.65
				tonnes. The thieves ⁶
				lieve the bell 7 hidder
				kesperson said, 'It ⁸
in	the	e local area – if it was,	we wou	ld know about it. She
			he bell fo	or the value of the metal
IT (cor	ntains.		
1		must pay		can have paid
		might pay		might have paid
2		could be using		must use
2		can be using		can't use must have taken
3		can take		milst have taken
			D	
4	1000	must take	1	can't have taken
4	Α	could be	С	can't have taken can't have been
	A B	could be must be	C D	can't have taken can't have been could have been
	A B A	could be must be can't have been	С	can't have taken can't have been could have been
5	A B A B	could be must be	C D C	can't have taken can't have been could have been might have been
5	A A B A	could be must be can't have been could have been	C D C D	can't have taken can't have been could have been might have been must have been must use
5	A B A B A	could be must be can't have been could have been can't have used	C D C D	can't have taken can't have been could have been might have been must have been
5	A B A B A B	could be must be can't have been could have been can't have used must have used	C C D C	can't have taken can't have been could have been might have been must have been must use could be using
5	A B A B A B	could be must be can't have been could have been can't have used must have used might have been	C D C D C D	can't have taken can't have been could have been might have been must have been must use could be using might be
5 6 7 8	A B A B A B A B	could be must be can't have been could have been can't have used must have used might have been can't be must be can't be	C D C D C D	can't have taken can't have been could have been might have been must have been must use could be using might be can be might be could be
5 6 7 8	A B A B A B A B A	could be must be can't have been could have been can't have used must have used might have been can't be must be can't be could sell	C D C D C D C	can't have taken can't have been could have been might have been must have been must use could be using might be can be might be could be can't have sold
5 6 7 8	A B A B A B A B A	could be must be can't have been could have been can't have used must have used might have been can't be must be can't be	C D C D C D C	can't have taken can't have been could have been might have been must have been must use could be using might be can be might be could be
5 6 7 8	A B A B A B A B	could be must be can't have been could have been can't have used must have used might have been can't be must be can't be could sell must sell		can't have taken can't have been could have been might have been must have been must use could be using might be can be might be could be could be could be could be
5 6 7 8 9	A B A B A B A B	could be must be can't have been could have been can't have used must have used might have been can't be must be can't be could sell must sell ond to the sentences	C D C D C D C D C	can't have taken can't have been could have been might have been must have been must use could be using might be can be might be could be can't have sold could have sold ur own ideas.
5 6 7 8 9 Re	A B A B A B A B S P W	could be must be can't have been could have been can't have used must have used might have been can't be must be can't be could sell must sell ond to the sentences hen I got home from se	C D C D C D C D C D C D C D C D C D C D	can't have taken can't have been could have been might have been must have been must use could be using might be can be might be could be could be could have sold could have sold ur own ideas. e front door was unlocked
5 6 7 8 9	A B A B A B A B A B A B A B A B A B A B	could be must be can't have been could have been can't have used must have used might have been can't be must be can't be could sell must sell ond to the sentences hen I got home from se	C D C D C D C D C D C D C D C D C D C D	can't have taken can't have been could have been might have been must have been must use could be using might be can be might be could be can't have sold could have sold ur own ideas.
5 6 7 8 9 Re 1	A B A B A B A B A B I V fir	could be must be can't have been could have been can't have used must have used might have been can't be must be can't be could sell must sell ond to the sentences hen I got home from so wrote an essay on my lid the file.	C D C D C D C D C D C D C D C D C D C D	can't have taken can't have been could have been might have been must have been must use could be using might be can be might be could be could be could have sold could have sold ur own ideas. e front door was unlocked

4 I left my bike outside the station, but it isn't here now.

- 1 You are going to read a text about the history of money. Think about the questions below.
 - 1 Why do you think people needed to invent money?
 - 2 What did people use before coins and banknotes were invented?
- 2 **5.05** Do the quiz. Then read the text quickly to check your answers.

THE HISTORY OF MONEY

What did people do before money was invented?

A they traded goods with each other B they used different things as money C both A and B

Which do you think was NOT used as a form of money?

A cows

B stones

C salt

3 Where were the first metal coins made?

A China

B India

C Turkey

4 Which country created the dollar?

Spain

B the United States C Canada

5 Where were the first banknotes used?

Where v A China

B Turkey

C Sweden

Competition of the Contract of

6 How much of the world's total currency is cash?

A 88%

B 7%

C 8%

STRATEGY Distinguishing between fact and speculation

Facts often mention statistics and other evidence and include phrases such as *According to ..., In fact, ..., Looking at the data, ..., It is known that ...*

Speculation is often based on opinions, beliefs, things that are probable and include phrases such as It can be argued ..., Most people agree that ..., It's clear (to me) that ..., It's extremely likely that ...

- **3** Read the strategy above. According to the text, is the following information fact (*F*) or speculation (*S*)? Which phrase tells you this?
 - 1 Money means coins and banknotes. ____
 - 2 People used to exchange something they had for something they wanted. ___
 - 3 Cowrie shells were an early form of money. ___
 - 4 The first coins were made over 2,500 years ago. ____
 - 5 The US dollar was based on an earlier coin. ____
 - 6 Banknotes are more useful than coins. __
 - 7 The first European banknotes were printed in the 17th century. ____
 - 8 All the cash in the world has a value of approximately \$7 trillion. ____
- **4** Decide if the following statements are fact or speculation. Rewrite them using a suitable phrase.
 - 1 Humans lived happily without money for thousands of years.
 - 2 The Chinese invented banknotes because they're light to carry.
 - 3 Most people wish they had more money.
 - 4 Over 170 different currencies are used around the world.
 - 5 Over 90% of the world's money is not cash.

What is money?

When you make a deposit into your bank account, or withdraw cash from an ATM, do you ever ask yourself this question? Most people agree that it's the stuff we keep in our wallets – what we use to pay for an ice cream or that new pair of trainers online. But what happened before coins, banknotes and credit cards? In the past, it's likely that people traded with each other for goods they needed. If you had chickens but you needed wool, you could trade some of your chickens with someone who had wool. This was called 'bartering'.

Over time, people in different parts of the world began using different things to measure the value of the goods they traded. These included salt, cows, grains, pieces of metal and shells. It's known that cowrie shells were used as money in India and China for hundreds of years. It's clear that these shells had many benefits:

they were small and light, had a value everyone agreed on and couldn't easily be destroyed. As societies developed, people began to use coins made of metal. According to historians, the first coins were made in about 600 BCE, in Lydia in modern Turkey. Early coins came in many different shapes and sizes. Some coins made in China had holes in the middle so they could be carried on a

string. The 16th-century Spanish silver dollar could be broken into eight pieces, called reales. It's almost certain that the US dollar was based on this coin.

Paper money was created in ancient China when traders got tired of carrying around large numbers of heavy coins. It can be argued that banknotes are more useful than coins because they can have different values depending on what is written on them. They are also lighter and can be easily stored and transported. Paper money didn't arrive in Europe until much later. In fact, the first banknotes were printed in Sweden in the 17th century.

Looking at data from international banking institutions, all the cash in the world is currently worth around \$7 trillion. However, that's only about 8% of the total value of the global economy, which is \$88 trillion. Most economic activity is cashless, and global business is carried out by moving data electronically between computers. Money still exists in huge quantities – we just don't see so much of it anymore.

GLOBAL SKILLS

1 Complete the sentences with the phrases below. Then decide if you agree or disagree with the sentences.

animal rights child labour environmental impact fair trade greenhouse gases plant-based diet plastic waste product origin working conditions

Are you a 'good' global consumer?
1 like fruit and vegetables, but I don't know if I could eat a 100%
2 I'm concerned about, so I'm eating less meat.
It concerns me that the factories making some of the things I buy have very bad
If I knew clothes were made using, I wouldn't buy them, even if I really liked them.
I always try to buy coffee and chocolate – it's good to know farmers are paid properly.
3 Everything we buy affects the planet, so I always think about the of the things I use.
7 Climate change is a huge problem, so I will do what I can to reduce like CO_2 .
8 is important to me, so I always read the label to check where something comes from.
I never buy water in bottles, and I use my own bags when I go shopping – I'm helping to reduce

- 2 **5.06** Listen to two friends discussing ways to become better global consumers. Which items in Ex 1 do they mention?
- 3 5.06 Listen again. Complete the notes with one or two words.
 - 1 The three things people can do to think globally but act locally are ...

Α	the number of things we buy
В	as much as possible.
С	the things we buy.

2

E>	amples of the	three things in	question 1 are
Α	buyclothes.	but better	£
В		_ clothes you _	with
C	friends.	at	a long time and

them. 3 Lucy thinks the canteen could serve more

_ meals.

4 The girls are going to ask students to. with their own ideas.

4 Read the ideas people sent to Lucy and Beth. Use information from Ex 1-3 and the phrases below to make suggestions for becoming a better consumer.

I suggest if we ..., then we could / should what about why not

Your comments

- 1 Too many students come to school by car. students / walk or cycle use public transport / benefits environment
- 2 Every year, we get new books. This is a waste of paper and bad for the environment.

people / not write in books book sale / at end of year

3 Why do we all think we need new trainers and the latest smartphone?

buy less stuff look after things / last longer

4 There's nowhere to put our waste paper and drinks cans so everyone throws them in the rubbish bin.

recycling bins / at school put in playground

5 In the winter, the school is always really hot, and this isn't necessary if we wear warm clothes.

turn down heating / at school save energy / fewer greenhouse gases

- 6 We need to stop throwing our clothes away after we've worn them a few times, then buy new ones. organise / swapping event reuse / things we don't need
- 7 When people finish school, they leave all the lights and computers switched on and the doors open. This wastes a lot of energy.

turn off lights and computers shut doors / stop heat escaping

8 When things get a bit old or broken, we just throw them away and buy new ones. But surely it's better to fix things rather than throw them away?

start / repair shop use things / longer

- **5** Decide which of the suggestions would work in your school. Are there any that would not work?
- 6 You are going to plan a poster presentation to the school council. Use some of the ideas in Ex 3 and 4 to design the poster. Use the poster plan below or your own ideas. Include a few key words or phrases for each bullet point.

The first one is an example.

Reduce: walk, cycle or take the bus to school

Being a better global consumer

Reuse:

Reuse:

1 Read the quotes. What advice would you give in each situation?

- A 'I never seem to have enough time to study.'
- B 'I'm interested in improving my spoken English.'
- C 'I'm worried that I'm spending too much money.'
- D 'I'd really like to earn some extra cash.'

2 **5.07** Listen to two calls to a radio phone-in show called *Manage Your Life*. For each, say ...

- 1 which situation from Ex 1 is discussed.
- 2 what the caller wants / doesn't want to do.
- 3 what you think is the best thing the adviser suggests.
- 3 **§ 5.07** Complete the dialogues with the phrases below. Then listen again and check.

Dialogue 1

have you thought about how do you think I ought to if I were you it would be a good idea if what about what's the best thing to do your best option is to

Felipe I need some advice about money. My mum makes

		o my bank account every month. s, I usually spend it in two weeks.
	1	if I want to reduce my spending
Adviser	2	withdraw a small amount of cash
		ly buy what you really need, and don't ore until the following week.

Felipe OK, that makes sense.

Adviser Also, ³_______ you kept a note of everything you spend. That way you'll soon find out where your money is going.

Felipe I need a new laptop, but the one I want is really expensive. 4______ pay for that?

Adviser Does it have to be new? 5______ getting a second-hand one?

Felipe ⁶_______getting a loan?

Adviser You could do that, but 7_______, I'd try not to get into debt.

Dialogue 2

have you tried how do you think I should do that what about what do you advise me to do? you really ought to you'd better you'll need to

Hannah I have some important exams this year, and I'm a bit worried.

Adviser OK. How can I help?

Hannah I spend most of my time studying the subjects I like and then don't have enough time for the others.

8 ______?

Adviser Well, you need to organise your study time better.

Hannah You're right. 9_____?

Adviser First, 10 _____ making a study plan?

Every week, 11 ____ write down the subjects you have to study and decide how much time to spend on each.

Hannah Thanks, that's really helpful. 12 writing essays? I always leave it to the night before ...

Adviser Well, again, ¹³______ think about making a plan! Think about how long you need for your reading and note-taking, not just the writing. And ¹⁴_____ start early – don't wait until the last minute!

STRATEGY Using a variety of functional phrases

When you speak, try and use a variety of phrases and expressions for particular functions to make your spoken English sound more interesting and natural, like asking for information, agreeing or disagreeing, giving advice or making suggestions.

4 Read the strategy above. Then complete the dialogues with phrases from Ex 3.

1	Α	My friend has started borrowing money from me. She never pays it back, but she keeps asking. 1 respond?
	В	just saying 'no'?
	Α	I'm worried if I do that it will ruin our friendship.
	В	I don't think it will. 3tell her
		you can't lend her any more money.
2	Α	I'm interested in improving my spoken English. 4?
	В	5paying for private
		conversation lessons?
	Α	Yes, but it's expensive.
	В	OK, then I think ⁶ you found
		a Skype friend on social media. That's like a
		penfriend, only you speak English instead of writing.
3	Α	I want to give up studying science next year and focus on languages. My parents aren't happy.
	_	this carefully Sciences are
	В	triis carefully. Sciences are
		important for many careers.
	A	l agree, but I think languages are more useful.
	В	I'm not sure that's true. I think
		⁹ do some research before

5 • 5.08 PRONUNCIATION Mark where you think the links are in the sentences. Then listen and check.

- 1 I'm interested in improving my spoken English.
- 2 Keep a note of everything you spend.

you make a decision.

- 3 I have some important exams this year, and I'm a bit worried.
- 4 Make a list of everything you need to study each week.

6 You are going to write a script of a similar dialogue to the radio phone-in. Choose the situation below or use your own ideas.

The caller has just moved to a new town with their family. It's the start of the school holidays and they are lonely. They ask for advice about ...

- · how to make new friends.
- · what activities to do in a new town.
- how to keep in touch with their old friends.

7 Plan your work.

Make some notes on the questions the caller could ask, and advice that you think would be helpful.

Decide which useful phrases you will use to ask for and give advice.

8 Write your script. When you have finished, check that you have used a variety of phrases to ask for and give advice.

5.9 WRITING

1 Read the bullet points and the email below. Then answer the questions.

- · Say why you are writing.
- Explain the problem in detail.
- Explain how the company could improve its service.
- Say what you would like the company to do as a solution to the problem.
- 1 Has the writer included all four points?
- 2 Which parts of the email match each point?

_	Willest parts of the cital matericaen point.				
,	← →		8		Û
	From: Maisie Long To: customerservice@techsoundshelp.com Re: Delivery failure				
	Dear Sir or Madam,				
A I am writing to complain about the ¹ very bad service that I ² received from your company recently.					

B On Monday 16 October, I ordered a set of wireless headphones from you. My old headphones had stopped working, and ³I need them for my studies. On Tuesday, you sent me an email to say they were ready to ⁴pick up from your store in town. However, when I went to the store, they hadn't arrived. The assistant didn't seem ⁵worried about the delay, and suggested

that I should ⁶return the next day.

- On Wednesday, I made a second trip to the store. The headphones had arrived, but when I opened the box, I discovered they were the wrong model. The assistant didn't ⁷apologise, but ⁸promised me he would order the correct ones. This would take at least two more days. I asked him to ⁹get in touch with me by phone when they arrived. However, he said it was my responsibility to contact the store.
- I am ¹⁰really unhappy with your service. Firstly, I don't think you ought to email customers unless you ¹¹are able to guarantee the goods they ordered are available. Secondly, your staff need to understand that ¹²it isn't OK for customers to wait so long for an important order.
- I have now been without the headphones for five days. I ¹³want to get some compensation for the extra cost of travelling into the city, and an apology from your company for ¹⁴these problems.

¹⁵I look forward to your reply.

Yours faithfully,

Maisie Long

2 Answer the questions.

- 1 What did Maisie order?
- 2 Why is she complaining?
- 3 How does she think the company could improve its service?
- **4** What does she want the company to do about her situation?

STRATEGY Selecting a suitable register

When writing a letter or email in a formal register, ...

- avoid using contractions, abbreviations, phrasal verbs and slang.
- do not use language and phrases that you would use when writing with a friend or family member.
- start and finish your letter using different phrases depending on whether you know the name of the person or not.
- **3** Read the strategy above. Look at the <u>underlined</u> words and phrases in the email. Which are formal and which are informal?

4		tch the inforn h the more fo		ohrases you ident low.	tified in Ex 3
	1	assured	collect	concerned	contact

-	assured colle	ctconcerned	Contac
_	extremely poor	_ it is not acceptable	
_	the inconvenience	they are necessary	
_	very dissatisfied _	would like to request	

- **5** Rewrite the quotes in a more formal written register.
 - 1 'Hello there, The service we got from your company was really bad.'
 - 2 'No one said sorry they just promised me everything would be fine.'
 - 3 'If you're worried about anything, you can get in touch with us by phone.'
 - 4 'I'm really unhappy with the goods I received, and I want to get a replacement.'
 - 5 'It isn't OK to treat customers in this way you need to offer some compensation for these problems.'
- **6** You are going to write an email of complaint. Look at the situation and make a list of two or three problems that you might need to complain about.

You and your friends play for a local football team. You recently ordered some new shirts for the team with numbers and names on the back. When the shirts arrived, there were some problems. You contacted the company, but the assistant didn't want to help you. Write an email to the manager. Explain the problems you've had, what happened when you complained and what you would like them to do now.

- **7** Plan your email. Use your notes in Ex 6 and the paragraph structure in Ex 1. Think about ...
 - · what information you will include in each paragraph.
 - · which formal words and phrases you will use.
- 8 Write your email.

9 CHECK YOUR WORK Did you ...

- start and finish your email correctly?
- use formal words and phrases from this lesson?
- avoid contractions, informal, familiar and slang words and phrases?
- check your spelling, grammar and punctuation?

G

Attractive ____

We are ___

There is ____

country. retailer

4 We sell more food than any other company in this

5 Who do you usually buy your stock from? supplier

6 People buy and sell some animals illegally. trade

Which ______ normally use for buying stock?

_____ in some animals.

G	ra	mr	mar	4 (
1	ve	rb i	n the sentence halves. Then <u>underline</u> the modal n each sentence and decide if it expresses advice, sity, obligation or prohibition.	1
			u must tell your parents where you are	
			rlo needs to improve his English	3
			ought not to use plastic packaging	
			u don't have to start work at 9.00a.m	4
	5	Υοι	u mustn't eat so much fast food	
	6	Stu	idents at UK schools have to wear a uniform	;
	7	Υοι	should have a savings goal each month	(
	Α	wh	en you work for this company.	,
	В	be	cause it's bad for the environment.	-
	C	be	cause it's bad for your health.	
	D	SO	that they all look similar.	Cu
	E	ort	they will worry about you.	5 (
			that you don't spend all your money.	t
	G	bef	fore he studies in the US.	
2	Ch	100	se the correct alternative.	
	A	ziz	I've just tried to withdraw cash from an ATM, and it says there's no money in my account. That ¹ can't be / mustn't be right – my boss always pays in my wages	
			on a Friday.	
			Have you bought anything online recently?	
	A	ziz	Yes, one or two things. But I ² can't have /	
			might not have spent all my money.	
			Then the bank ³ must make / must have made a mistake. Why don't you call them?	
	A	ziz	I will Oh, wait a minute. It ⁴ might not be / mustn't be the bank's fault.	
	La	ıra	What do you mean?	
	A	ziz	You remember we played that computer game the	
			other evening, and I bought those extra characters?	
	La	ra	Oh, yeah. You paid online with your bank card. That ⁵ can be / must be it!	
V	oc	ab	ulary	
3	as	the	elete the second sentence so that it means the same first. Use between two and four words including the in bold .	
	1		er 1 million cars are supplied to China every year. imports	
			na cars every year.	
	2		ople in Finland drink more coffee than anywhere else	
			the world. consumers	
			ople in Finland are the biggest in	-
	2		ou put products in attractive boxes, this can make	L
	J		em sell faster. packaging	2

_ lead to increased sales.

__ of food in this country.

	-	omplete the sentences.
	1	Most lenders charge an i r of at least 3%.
	2	It's a good idea to check your b
	3	severy month. The interest we owe you was cto your
	4	account yesterday. Lots of school students e a w
	5	by working part-time at weekends. Simran doesn't want to get into d, so he
	3	never borrows money.
	6	If you want to open a b, you will need some ID.
	7	I usually w cash from the ATM once a week.
ù	ır	nulative review
		omplete the interview with one word in each gap. More an one answer may be possible.
		Why did you start a business? I started my sports clothing company because I couldn't find anything that I wanted to wear to the gym. I thought to myself: I
2 3	. 1	Which lesson in this unit did you enjoy the most? Why? Which of the grammar points did you find most difficult? How can you apply the strategy of listening for specific details to your own listening and reading? What do you think are the most difficult things to remember to include when you write a formal email or letter?

6.1 VOCABULARY



- **1 a** What can you remember about the vlog? Are the sentences true (*T*) or false (*F*)?
 - 1 George and his brother are both students.
 - 2 The flat they share is very small, but in a great location. ___
 - 3 Manchester is not popular with tourists. ____
 - 4 George and his brother want to rent a flat Croatia. ____
 - 5 The website says the flat in Croatia is near the beach. _
 - 6 The kitchen doesn't have enough equipment. _
 - 7 George and his brother will have to share a bedroom. __
 - 8 Croatia gets very hot in summer. ____
 - b 6.01 Watch or listen again and check.
- 2 Match words 1-8 to definitions A-H.

1	air conditioning	5	basement _
2	appliance	6	ceiling

3 armchair ____ 7 curtains ____

4 attic ____ 8 freezer ___

- A pieces of material to cover a window
- B a system for keeping buildings or cars cool
- C a floor in a building that is below ground level
- D a comfortable piece of furniture that you sit in
- **E** the surface of a room that is opposite the floor
- F a piece of electrical equipment like a fridge or a toaster
- G something you put food in to keep it very cold
- H the room at the top of a house, inside the roof
- **3** Match the <u>underlined</u> phrases to the words and phrases below.

built-in cosy match the style of spacious store take up space tiny

- 1 'Where can we put our bikes when we aren't using them?'
- 2 'The fire makes this room really warm and comfortable.'
- 3 'That huge sofa uses up a lot of the floor area.'
- 4 'It's a big flat and there's plenty of room.'
- 5 'The bathroom's really small it's only 3.5 m².
- 6 'I like your hat it goes well with your coat.'
- **7** 'Those shelves <u>that are built into the wall</u> look great.'

4	Complete the review with words and phrases from this
	lesson

Overview	Reviews	Availability	Мар		
****	*				
We stayed in t	his old apartme antastic colour	ent in Rio for a wee s – the ¹	k. It was		
in the windows and the carpets were good quality and everything perfectly ² the building.					
There was a 3		living room	with two		
There was a ³ living room with two big sofas and several comfortable ⁴ lt had long shelves covering one wall from floor to ⁵ , with books. The kitchen had					
, with books. The kitchen had lots of 6 , although we didn't do much cooking. There was a 7 , which we used to make ice for our drinks, but it was 8 , with very little room to store					
				any food. The	
all the boxes fo		down there, and the a lot of space, bu	,		
problem. Our bedroom was in the ¹² but it was big and even had a ¹³					
wardrobe with		or clothes. It was ve at night, and we h			
views of Sugar		It got really hot du			

5 **6.02 REAL** ENGLISH Complete the dialogue with the phrases below. Then listen and check.

	chance find the time get on with it ta-da	let me guess		
Ben	Could you ¹ this evening?	to give me a hand		
Sam	0	you want me to help you		
	paint the basement.			
Ben	How did you know?			
Sam	I heard Dad ask you earlier. Did he offer to pay you?			
Ben	3(of that! No, but he gave me		
	money for the stuff we			
Sam	Did you get everything?			
		! One can of paint and		
	two brushes.			
Sam	OK, then. 5	!		

6 **VOCABULARY BOOSTER** Now practise **Home** vocabulary on page 109.

62 Unit 6

1		o the sentences contain a defining (D) or non-defining (N) lative clause?
	1	My bedroom is the place where I feel most comfortable
	2	London, which is the UK's largest city, has the oldest metro system in the world
	3	Our teacher, who is Swedish, speaks four languages fluently
	4	In Shanghai there are at least five buildings which are over 300 metres tall
	5	The basement, where we usually play video games, gets really hot in summer
	6	I've just had a text from a girl that I knew five years ago
		Kamila, whose parents come from Pakistan, is the first person in her family to go to university
	8	Have you met Sami who's in your sister's class?
2	w ar	omplete the sentences with the correct pronoun: <i>who</i> , <i>hich</i> , <i>where</i> , <i>whose</i> , <i>that</i> or – (no pronoun). More than one aswer may be possible.
		Brighton, my family live, has two universities.
	2	Zahra is the only person I know doesn't like ice cream.
	3	That table, belonged to my grandmother, takes up a lot of space.
	4	That's the house my sisters and I used to live in.
	5	Diego is the guy parents bought him a car.
	6	My cousin, lives in Hong Kong, is staying with us.
	7	This is the band I was telling you about.
		Istanbul, has a population of 15.5 million, gets over 30 million visitors a year.
3		ewrite each pair of sentences as one sentence with a efining or non-defining relative clause.
		The house had no air conditioning. It was really uncomfortable.
	2	Carrie is my friend. Her family live next door.
	3	That looks like Mark's bike. It was stolen last month.
	4	Vancouver is one of the world's greenest cities. It has over 200 parks.
	5	Mexico has some beautiful beaches. We stayed there last year.
	6	I visited my brother. He lives in Switzerland.

7 Barack Obama was born in Hawaii. He was the US

8 This is the science lab. We have chemistry lessons here.

president from 2008 to 2016.

- 4 Correct the mistakes in seven of the sentences.
 - 1 Harry, that father is an estate agent, is in my class.
 - 2 Venice is a city who has 18 million visitors a year.
 - 3 This is the beach which I saw a shark.
 - 4 Lola's sister, where lives in California, is an actor.
 - **5** This singer, which name I've forgotten, is great!
 - 6 Anya really enjoyed the book we read in class.
 - 7 The flat, who I rent, belongs to our uncle.
 - 8 Hasan can't find the music where he downloaded.
- 5 Complete the text with the relative clauses below. There is one relative clause you do not need.



The US architect Adrian Smith is probably most famous as the man 1...... The Burj Khalifa in Dubai, 2...., has held this position since it was completed in 2010. But Smith, 3....., has also designed many other famous buildings. These include the Trump Tower in New York, and the Jinmao Building in Shanghai, 4..... Smith was born in Chicago, 5..... He is particularly interested in sustainable architecture, creating buildings 6..... One of his most recent designs is the Jeddah Tower in Saudi Arabia, 7.....

- A that are both functional and eco-friendly
- **B** where he studied and worked for most of his career
- C which is 828 m high
- **D** that is currently the world's tallest building.
- E which aims to be the world's first 1-km-high building
- F which was the tallest skyscraper in China until 2007
- G who designed the world's tallest building
- H whose projects have won over 100 awards
- 6 Complete the sentences so they are true for you, or use your own ideas about a building, a person and a place you know well. Include a relative clause in each sentence.
 - 1 My favourite building _____
 - 2 A person I like ____
 - 3 Lalways enjoy visiting _____

6.3 LISTENING

What can you remember about the presentation in the Student's Book? Complete the summary with the words below.

barrel eco-friendly functional self-sufficient unique

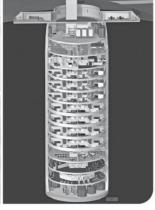
The Diogene House is unlike any other The house is tiny, but	
sustainable technologies to produce	
so it's completely 2 It h	as solar panels on the
roof for electricity, and it collects and	
cooking and washing. It doesn't harm	the environment,
which means it's more 3	_ than most other
buildings. Everything in the house is 4	- all the
furniture and appliances are practica	l and useful. And why
is it called the Diogene House? The ar	chitect named it after
the Greek philosopher Diogenes, who	lived in a wooden

2 Look at the photos of different places to live. Which ones could you describe using the words below? Which would you like / not like to live in? Why?

cosy eco-friendly functional self-sufficient spacious unique







- 3 6.03 Listen to four people talking about the places in the photos. Match speakers 1–4 to opinions (A–F). There are two opinions you do not need. Which speaker ...
 - A likes the feeling of space, but thinks noise and the weather could sometimes be a problem? ____
 - **B** says it's very spacious but doesn't have enough storage space? ____
 - **C** says it probably wouldn't suit two or more people because it isn't very spacious? ____
 - **D** likes that it's environmentally friendly, but would like more contact with other people? ____
 - **E** is worried that despite being cosy and warm, it isn't very eco-friendly? ____
 - **F** describes its advantages, but is concerned that some people may find living there difficult? ___

STRATEGY Evaluating positive and negative points

It's important to listen and evaluate what the speaker is trying to say. For example, you might listen for phrases expressing opinion and try to find positive and negative points of the things the speaker is describing.

4 • 6.03 Read the strategy above. Then listen again and note down at least one positive and one negative point expressed by each speaker.

	Positive	Negative
Speaker 1	close to	it's quite, not much to store stuff
Speaker 2		
Speaker 3		
Speaker 4		

5 (a) 6.04 Read the sentences and decide if they introduce a positive (*P*) or a negative (*N*) point. Then listen and complete the sentences in no more than three words.

1	What's great about living there is that it looks	
	for one person	
2	I also like the fact that you're	
3	However, there isn't much	_ to stor

4 Maybe it would be better if it was closer to

5	What makes living on the	SO
	special?	

6 When you look at these breathtaking views of the city, you can see that the apartment was carefully

7	One obvious problem is that it's a
	down to the basement

- 8 Another thing that's worth mentioning is that it's completely ______. ___
- 9 I'm a bit worried that the people who live there a bit sad. ____

6 Think about a place you have read about or have seen online, or use the photo below. Write three or four sentences describing its positive and negative points as a place to live. Use phrases from Ex 5.

One of the biggest advantages of living here is ...



	6.05 What are they talking about? Listen and match he speakers to the words below.	5 Kaya and her Anita are meeting a(n) tomorrow. They want to of a small
	apartment block of flats cottage detached house lift semi-detached house skyscraper terraced house	near the university, which they are hoping to rent. (arrange a viewing, estate agent, flatmate, terraced house
	5	4 Complete the articles with the words and phrases below.
	6	detached downtown flat flatmate
	7	pay the rent skyscraper suburbs
4	8	
2 N	Natch words 1–9 to definitions A–I.	Choosing your ideal home
	arrange a viewing 6 sign the contract	Do you want to live in a huge ¹
	downtown 7 storey	house with a swimming pool? Or maybe you'd prefer
	estate agent 8 the suburbs	
	pay the rent 9 within walking distance	a tiny ² on the 30th floor of a ³ ? Living ⁴
5	flatmate	can be expensive, so if you don't mind taking the bus, then a place in the ⁵ could
	one floor of a skyscraper	be a cheaper option. And if you're a student, you
	someone you share an apartment with	may need a ⁶ so it's easier to
	the busy centre of the city	⁷ each month.
D	write your name on an official document saying you	
-	agree to do something	apartment arrange a viewing cottage estate agents
	give someone money to live in a flat or house that they own an area outside the city centre where people live	sign the contract terraced within walking distance
	is someone whose job is to sell and rent houses to people	
	organise an appointment to see a flat or house before	Some advice about renting
	you decide to buy or rent it	Are you looking for a city centre ⁸
I	close enough that you don't need to drive or use public transport	or a pretty little ⁹ by the
	Complete the sentences with the correct words or phrases in brackets.	sea? Do you need shops, schools and work to be 10? Whatever is important to you, always 11and see the place for
	We've just been to see our new home – it's an amazing in one of those tall buildings near	always ¹¹ and see the place for yourself. Remember, ¹² always take attractive photos to make even the smallest
	the river. My parents are going to this afternoon. I'm so excited – I've never lived in a real	house look like a palace! And
	before!	of course, don't ¹⁴ until you've read it carefully.
	(skyscraper, apartment, sign the contract)	
2	Louis's mum is happy to on this	5 • 6.06 PRONUNCIATION Read the sentences and
	flat. It's expensive, but it's in the	underline the stressed syllable of the compound nouns
	area of the city, close to where she works. The family used to live in a small which was	in bold . Then listen, check and repeat.
	miles from anywhere, but now everything they need is	1 My flatmate and I often argue about the housework.
		2 Our living room has lots of big bookshelves.
	(cottage, downtown, pay the rent, within walking distance)	3 There's a storeroom in the basement, and a washing machine.
3	Tom's mum and dad have persuaded his grandparents	4 They have their own bedrooms , but they share a
	to sell their old It's too big for	bathroom.
	them now, and it's, so they have	5 I never take the bus when I go downtown – there are to
	to drive to get into town. They're moving to a small	many traffic jams .
	in the city centre, which will be much easier.	6 There's a sports centre with a coffee shop across the street.
	(block of flats, detached house, in the suburbs)	6 Choose one of the following options and write a short
4	Juan's family live in a on the tenth floor of a ten tower block, but	description using vocabulary from this lesson.
	unfortunately there's only one	 The flat or house where you live, or a flat or house you know well.
	They are hoping to move to a in a quieter	
	area very soon.	How to rent a flat or house in your country.
	(flat, lift, semi-detached house, storey)	7 VOCABULARY BOOSTER Now practise Housing vocabulary on page 109.

	Complete the sentences with the correct passive form of the verbs in brackets. More than one answer may be possible. 1 When we arrived, we a room with a spectacular view. (give)	 4 Complete the sentences in the passive voice using the prompts and the words in brackets. 1 Paris is the world's most expensive city. (believe)
:	The Copacabana Palace Hotel in Rio opposite the beach. (locate)	Paris 2 The cost of renting a flat increases every year. (know)
:	Breakfast in the dining room from 7.00 a.m. (will / serve)	lt
	Tables in the restaurant in advance by guests. (can / reserve)	3 They think the Ice Hotel is surprisingly warm and cosy. (say) The Ice Hotel
	Looking at the plans, I can see the houseto be eco-friendly. (design)We had to stand during the concert because all the seats	4 We know that many hotels have closed this year. (think)
	before we arrived. (take) 7 The retailer made a mistake with my online order and I a refund. (offer)	It
	The building until the end of the year. (will not / complete)	It 6 People say that green is a relaxing colour to paint your
	Choose the correct alternative. 1 We didn't expect to be / being asked to pay three months' rent in advance.	walls. (think) It
	2 My grandmother really enjoys to be / being surrounded by her family on special occasions.	5 Complete the online review with the correct passive form of the words in brackets.
:	Make sure you give Paulo clear instructions – he needs to be / being told exactly what to do.	Reviews Palacio de Sal
•	I would like to be / being chosen for the school football team next season.	
	 5 Elena hopes to be / being offered a part-time job as a hotel receptionist. 6 My sisters and I disliked to be / being taken to the dentist 	
	when we were kids. 7 I don't regret to be / being sent abroad to learn English	21 June
2 1	last summer – I had a great time.	If you ¹ (enjoy / give) the opportunity to try new things, you should visit one of Bolivia's most
	Write two sentences in the passive voice. 1 Amazon sent me a package.	unusual hotels, the Palacio de Sal. It ² (consider / be) unique because the walls, floors, ceilings and furniture ³ (make) from blocks of salt! The rooms ⁴ (design) beautifully,
:	A package The hotel provides breakfast in guests' rooms. Guests	but TVs 5 (not / include); however, free Wi-Fi 6 (provide). There's an amazing swimming pool and spa – the minerals in the water 7 (think / have) powerful health
	Breakfast Someone will show you the apartment. You	(think / have) powerful health benefits. There are also breathtaking views of the unique landscape, which soft years ago when a huge lake dried up. While we were there, we 9
,	The apartment The airline has sent us the tickets. The tickets	(offer / the chance / take) a tour of the area. We 10 (not expect / show) very much, but we saw cactus plants, which we
	We The store will offer me a refund.	lake that ¹² (tell) are very ancient – and a red lake that ¹² (fill) with hundreds of pink flamingoes! I ¹³ (would love / take) on a tour of the desert at night – apparently, an amazing number of stars ¹⁴ (can / see).
	A refund They're giving each student a free dictionary. Each student	6 Write sentences that are true for you. Use the sentence structures below and a passive form.
	A free dictionary	1 enjoy / like / don't like being
	7 The university didn't provide me with a book list.	2 In future I hope / would like to be given / offered
	A book list	3 My home town is believed / known to be / have

4 I was told by my parents / friends that _

1 What can you remember about the interview in the Student's Book? Complete the summary with the words and phrases below.

anywhere in the world family with kids house sitters owners pay rent photographer South Africa three weeks website designer

Naomi and Paul are excited about going to ¹_______ who live in other people's properties while the ³______ are away. They look after everything in the house and garden, and pick up important mail. For this they get paid, and they don't ⁴______ Paul is a ⁵_____ and Naomi is a ⁶______ Their jobs mean they can work ⁷______ They try to stay in each place for at least ⁸_____ They don't think the lifestyle is suitable for a ⁹_____ , but it works well for them.

2 Read the advertisements. Would either of these jobs interest you? What do you think would be the advantages and disadvantages of each job?

Friendly couple with positive attitude to life required to manage cottages and a café on a small island. Accommodation and food are provided. No experience is necessary. Email Kirsty on info@islandlifenow.net.

Sociable, hard-working person wanted to cook for guests on a luxury sailing boat. Must have a sense of adventure. Professional experience is useful, but not essential. Email Rob for more information: rob@oceanriders.net.

3 **6.07** Read the two texts quickly and check your ideas in Ex 2.

STRATEGY Recognising attitude from comment adverbs

Comment adverbs such as *sadly*, *naturally*, *interestingly*, *unbelievably* modify the meaning of the whole sentence. In order to understand the writer's attitude and views, you have to pay attention to comment adverbs they use. For example, if you read *Surprisingly*, *living in the suburbs is expensive*, we know that the writer didn't expect that, but, in the sentence *Naturally*, *living in the suburbs is expensive*, the writer's expectations were confirmed.

- **4** Read the strategy above. Then find four comment adverbs in each text which communicate the writer's attitude.
- **5** Match the adverbs you identified in Ex 4 to sentences 1–7 that mean the same.
 - 1 This was lucky. _____
 - 2 This is easy to understand. _____
 - 3 It would be good if this happened.
 - 4 This would have been the perfect situation.
 - **5** This is very surprising.
 - 6 This was unexpected. ___
 - 7 This is normal and logical.
 - 8 This was disappointing.
- 6 MEDIATION Imagine you are Rory, Kasia, or Alice and a friend has asked you about your experience working abroad. Talk about four things you liked and four things you disliked, based on information from the texts below.

TEXT A: RORY AND KASIA

We both wanted to escape from our previous lives, working long hours and commuting into downtown Boston every day. Ideally, we wanted to stay in the US, but then we saw this job looking after cottages on a tiny island off the west coast of Ireland. The island belongs to the Irish government. Their aim is to protect the local wildlife, so naturally the number of visitors is limited.

We're responsible for managing three cottages which are rented to a small number of guests.

We also serve tea, coffee and snacks to visitors. Everything has to be brought by boat from the mainland. We depend on the boat service for all our supplies. Obviously, we worry if the weather is bad and it can't sail.

We have our own tiny cottage and, amazingly, we don't pay any rent. One disadvantage of living here is there's no proper electricity supply. Enough electricity to charge our phones is created by a small wind turbine. It's a beautiful place to live – it's quiet, the air is clean and there are beautiful beaches. There's a big demand for jobs like this, so we feel lucky to have been chosen.

TEXT B: ALICE

I used to work for a big catering company in Bilbao. I was looking for a change, so I responded to the ad. My first experience of life at sea was a weekend sailing trip on the north coast of Spain. Unfortunately, the weather was terrible, but I was very excited about it. There were eight guests, plus the crew. I was given the freedom to create my own menus. Happily, everyone seemed to enjoy my cooking!

After this, I was asked to stay on as a member of the crew. I said yes immediately, and soon we were sailing to the south of England! The boat was rented by a company making a film about sea life. Unbelievably, I was given the chance to help with their work – I helped to find seals!

Sometimes when the weather is bad and I'm preparing a meal for 20 people, it can be hard to concentrate on cooking. But most of the time I love it. Hopefully, I can continue sailing and cooking. I would recommend it to anyone – I'm so glad I decided to answer that ad.



6.7 GLOBAL SKILLS

- 1 What can you remember about the article in the Student's Book? Read the extract from a website providing advice for teenagers.
 - 1 Complete the introduction with the words below.
 - 2 Which strategies for dealing with change were mentioned in the Student's Book?

adapt drastic inevitable minor resist

• • •					Teen Talk				
	Home	About	<u>Advice</u>	Contact	Help				

Introduction

'We all experience change at some time in our lives. But even a 1 _____ change can be stressful and can seem quite 2 ____ if it isn't what we want to happen. It helps to accept that some changes are 3 ____ . Rather than 4 ____ them, we need to find ways to 5 ____ to them. On this website, you'll find some strategies for how to do that.'

How to adapt to change in a positive way

- 1 Avoid blame. Wanting to blame other people or yourself for the change is a natural feeling, but you need to resist it. It won't change anything.
- 2 Allow yourself to feel emotion. It's normal to be upset, but you don't have to feel negative all the time.
- 3 Do things that make you happy. Read your favourite book, watch YouTube videos or listen to music.
- Focus on what you can control. There's no point in worrying about the things you can't control. Make a list of things you can do – and try to do them often.
- 5 Follow your usual routine. Get up and go to bed at the same time. If you run or cycle or go to the gym, keep doing that. Try to eat as healthily as you can, at the usual times.
- 6 Talking helps. Don't be afraid to talk to someone about how you feel a friend, a family member, a teacher. It's always OK to ask for support.
- 7 Look for opportunities, not problems. Don't wait for things to happen to you. Go out and make friends, take up a new sport or learn a new skill. Getting involved will help you adapt more quickly.
- 8 Accept the change. Change is inevitable, but our response to it isn't. Even if the change is not what you wanted, try to accept it in a positive way.

2 Read the posts by four teenagers. Answer the questions.

- 1 What change is each person experiencing?
- 2 Why are they unhappy about the change?

Ask for advice

Matt All my friends are moving to a new school together, but I have to go to another school in a different part of town. I hate the idea of changing schools. I'll really miss being with my friends every day.

Issie I have a part-time job in a supermarket. My employer wants me to move to a different store and change the times I work. I'm worried about moving to a bigger store and a different role working with customers.

Dara My dad's company is transferring him to a new job in Mexico, so the whole family is moving there too. I'm angry because this is a huge change for me. I don't speak Spanish and I'm really nervous about how I'll fit into a new education system.

Bea My sister is going away to university in the autumn. I'm really upset about this. We're very close and spend all our time together. My life will change a lot. I don't know what I'll do when she's gone.



- 3 Choose the correct alternative.
 - A It sounds like the move is ¹drastic / inevitable you don't have much choice. Allow yourself to feel ²control / upset, but also think about how you will ³adapt / resist to the new situation. If you're really unhappy, it might help to speak to your manager and ask for their ⁴routine / support. They might have some advice. But you will probably make new friends, and in a bigger store, there could be ⁵opportunities / support to learn new skills.

Q

- B In stressful times, it's a good idea to make a list of the things you can ⁶control / support and also follow your normal ⁷opportunities / routine as much as possible. If you ⁸resist / upset, it will only make things more difficult, so try to ⁹accept / adapt the change and look for the positives it's a chance to make new friends and learn a new language. It may not be as ¹⁰drastic / inevitable as you imagine.
- 4 Match responses A–B to two of the posts in Ex 2.
- **5** Write some similar advice for one of the other teenagers. Use the outline below and information from the website in Ex 1, or your own ideas.

Allow yourself to feelabout	, but also think
It's a good idea to	, and also try to
If you	, it will only
It might help to	
Try to	, and look for
You will probably	, and there could be

- 1 Read the text messages between two friends and answer the questions.
 - 1 Which of the topics 1–6 below do you think Maya will ask Will when they meet?
 - 2 Which do you think is the most important topic? Which is the least important?



<



10.35

Hi Maya. You said you needed a house sitter to look after your house and garden this summer. My cousin Will is looking for somewhere to live and I'm sure he'd be perfect. Shall I ask him to contact you?

10.37

Thanks, Anna. Yes, give him my number and we'll arrange a meeting.

- 1 if he has any previous experience
- 2 what time he usually goes to bed
- 3 if he is happy to clean the house
- 4 information about him
- 5 why he wants the job
- 6 what he does in his free time
- 2 Read the dialogue between Maya and Will, ignoring the gaps, and answer the questions.
 - 1 Which of the topics in Ex 1 doesn't Maya mention?
 - 2 Which questions does Maya ask that aren't mentioned in Ex 1?
 - Maya So, Will. Can you tell me a little bit about yourself?
 - Will ¹___I'm 21 years old and I'm studying at Bath University. I spent a year travelling and working before I went to university, so I'm quite independent. I like being outdoors, especially surfing with my friends.
 - Maya Why are you interested in house-sitting?
 - Will ² My flatmate is going home for the summer, and I can't afford to pay the rent on my own. House-sitting would solve that problem!

- Maya I see. Have you done any house-sitting before?
 - Will I looked after my parents' house for a month last Christmas while they were away. 3 ____ it isn't exactly the same, but I did OK.
- Maya I'm glad to hear it! And are you happy to keep the house clean and tidy?
 - Will Yes, I don't mind cleaning at all.
- Maya That's good so ... are there any jobs you can't stand?
- **Will** Well, ... cooking, I guess. ⁴___ It isn't my favourite thing to do.
- **Maya** What do you like doing at weekends? How often do you go out partying?
 - Will Hardly ever! ⁵____, I don't go out much ... except to go surfing. What else? ⁶____ ... I like music and playing computer games.
- Maya What do you think your friends would say about you?
- Will ⁷___ It depends who you ask, but I think they'd say I was hard-working and reliable, but maybe not very sociable.
- 3 Are there any questions you think would be important to ask that do not appear in Ex 1 and 2?

STRATEGY Hesitating

It's natural to hesitate when you're speaking either in your own language or in English. However, you should always try to maintain fluency. Try to speak calmly because this will give you enough time to think. When you aren't sure what to say, use some phrases for buying time and hesitating.

- **4** Read the strategy above. Then complete the script in Ex 2 with the phrases below. More than one answer may be possible.
 - A How shall I put it?
 - B I mean ...
 - C Let me think ...
 - **D** The thing is,
 - E That's a good question.
 - F Where should I start?
 - **G** Well, let's put it this way.
- **5 6.08** Listen to the dialogue and compare your answers in Ex 4.
- **6** You are going to write the script of a dialogue between a person looking for a flatmate and someone who wants to share a flat. Plan your work.
 - Decide what questions each person will ask to find out about their potential flatmate. Use the questions in Ex 1 for ideas.
 - Decide which phrases for buying time and hesitating you will use.
- 7 Write your script. When you have finished, check that you have used a variety of phrases to buy time and hesitate.

1 Read the advertisement. What information do you think someone interested in renting the room would want to know?

Flatmate wanted

JenM 🕓

(1) 18 Aug, 14.08





Flatmate wanted to share lovely, spacious two-bedroom apartment with friendly female student, 19. Quiet location within walking distance of local stores and transport. Available July–September. Rent \$1,250 per month. Email: jen.mcquarrie@mcquarries.com.

Reply

- 2 Read the email replying to the advertisement. In which paragraph does Samira ...
 - 1 ask about the location of the apartment? ____
 - 2 suggest arranging a viewing? ____
 - 3 say why she is writing? ___
 - 4 ask about the contents of the apartment? ____

< →

日命口前

To: Jen McQuarrie From: Samira Khan

Subject: Advertisement for flatmate

Dear Jen,

- A I have just arrived in New York to study here for the summer and I'm looking for a quiet place to rent for three months. I saw your advertisement for a flatmate which was on roomiapp.com. I wonder if you could answer a few questions about the apartment?
- B Could you tell me what street the apartment is on? I would like to live somewhere that isn't too far from the place where I am studying. The college campus is downtown do you happen to know how long it takes to walk there?
- I was wondering if the apartment has air conditioning, as I know the city gets very hot in summer. May I also ask you what appliances you have in the kitchen – for example, is there a washing machine and dryer? Your advert says how much the rent is, but I'd be interested to know if you require a deposit in advance.
- Naturally, I would like to see the apartment before I sign the contract. Could you let me know when it would be convenient to arrange a viewing?

I look forward to hearing from you.

Best wishes,

Samira Khan

STRATEGY Using appropriate word order: indirect questions

When you're writing an enquiry email to a person you don't know and want to sound polite, use indirect questions. Remember that the word order in indirect questions is the same as in affirmative sentences.

- **3** Read the strategy above. <u>Underline</u> the indirect questions used in Samira's email.
- **4** A student is preparing to write an email replying to an advertisement for a roommate. Read the notes and write an indirect question for each piece of information.
 - 1 Can you answer a few questions?
 - 2 Where is the flat exactly?
 - 3 Is it close to local shops?
 - 4 How far is it from the college?
 - 5 How much is the rent?
 - **6** Are heating and electricity included?
 - 7 Is there Wi-Fi? And a TV?
 - 8 Can I have guests to stay?
 - 9 Can I see the flat this week?
- **5** You are going to write an email replying to the advertisement below. Make notes of 4–6 pieces of information you would like to know about the flat. Use information from Ex 2 and 4 and your own ideas.

Flatmate wanted

Flatmate wanted to share large, spacious flat with two other students. All furniture and appliances included. Downtown location. Available from September. £400 per month. Email: Tom on tom9903@googlemail.com.

Reply

- 6 Plan your work. Use your notes from Ex 5, and the paragraph structure from Ex 2.
 - Write an indirect question for each piece of information you want to ask about.
 - Decide what information you will include in each paragraph.
- 7 Write your email.
- 8 CHECK YOUR WORK Did you ...
 - explain why you are writing this email?
 - · use indirect questions to sound polite?
 - · check your spelling, grammar and punctuation?

Grammar

- 1 Choose the correct alternative.
 - 1 The freezer, **which** / **that** was enormous, took up a lot of space in our kitchen.
 - 2 The apartments **where** / we looked at were too expensive.
 - **3** My flatmate, **which** / **who** is a student, sometimes finds it difficult to pay the rent.
 - 4 The hotel **where** / **that** my parents stayed used to belong to a famous actor.
 - 5 The house sitters **who** / were from Australia kept the place really clean.
 - 6 Sarah's flat, **which** / **where** is on the top floor, has amazing views.
- 2 Complete the second sentence using the passive so that it means the same as the first sentence.
 - The architect Frank Lloyd Wright designed many famous houses.

 Many for a cush a constant.

 The architect Frank Lloyd Wright designed many famous houses.

Many famous houses ______ the architect Frank Lloyd Wright.

- 2 I enjoy it when someone tells me a really interesting story.
 I enjoy ______ a really interesting story.
- 3 Everyone thinks that it is one of the most beautiful buildings in the world.
 It ______ one of the most beautiful buildings

in the world.4 We hope they will send us the contract tomorrow.

We _____ the contract tomorrow.

5 People believe downtown rents have risen by 25% in the last five years.

Downtown rents ______ by 25% in the last five years.

6 The hotel manager offered us a choice of rooms.

A choice of rooms _______ by the hotel manager.

Vocabulary

3 Complete the sentences with the words below. There are three words you do not need.

appliances attic basement built-in ceiling cosy curtains freezer match the style store study takes up space tiny

- 1 | really like those ______ wardrobes in your room.
- 2 There's a big cupboard upstairs where we _____our sports equipment.
- 3 Don't buy any more pizza there's plenty in the _____ already.
- 4 I never sit on that armchair it just _____ in my bedroom.
- 5 Our flat is small, but it's warm and comfortable it feels very ______, especially in cold weather.
- **6** The kitchen has lots of great _____ my favourite is the ice cream maker.
- 7 This modern desk doesn't ______ of the other furniture in Leo's living room, which is older.
- 8 There's a tiny bathroom in the _____ at the top of the house.
- 9 Don't make too much noise my dad is working in his

10 You get breathtaking views from these huge windows which stretch from the floor to the _____.

4	Complete the sentences with one of the pairs of words
	below.

arrange a viewing / flat cottage / sign the contract

detached house / block of flats lift / floor suburbs / flat

When you arrive, take the _______.
Our flat is on the 25th ______.

l'm going to live in the countryside, and tomorrow l'll ______ to rent a cosy little ______ with a garden.

They used to have a tiny ______ in the city centre, but last year they moved to a house in the _____.

4 I really want to see the ______, but the estate agent hasn't managed to _____

5 Would you prefer to live in a _____ with amazing views, or a _____ with a beautiful garden?

Cumulative review

5 Choose the correct answer: A, B or C.

Builders	permiss	ion to develop par	101
the city cent	re 2 lo	cal people current	ly
use as a 'gree	en' space to exercise	e and relax. A build	ing
20 3	high will be bu	uilt on the site. The	
apartments,	which 4	to be sold for	
millions of pe	ounds, are all large a	and ⁵	_
and have bre	eathtaking views of t	he city. The buildir	ng
company sai	d, 'This will improve	the 6	_
area of the c	ty. Several wealthy	people are known	
7	contracts to buy	the properties. An	nember
of the local o	ommunity, 8	did not war	nt to
9	, said, 'It's sad tha	at a beautiful part o	of the
city, 10	our children	n play, will be destr	oyed.
	nes ordinary people	e can 11	on –
not luxury ho	omes for millionaire	s!'	

1 A have given2 A whichB have been givenC which giveD whereC who

3 A flats4 A are expectedB expectedC storeysC were expected

5 A cosy B spacious C tiny

6 A downtown B skyscraper C suburbs

7 A to have signed B to be signed C to sign

8 A which B who C -

9 A name B be named C name them 10 A that B which C where

11 A pay the rent B sign the contract C take up space

REFLECT Think about the following questions.

- 1 Which lesson in this unit did you enjoy the most? Why?
- 2 Which of the grammar points did you find most difficult?
- 3 What are some phrases you can use when you aren't sure what to say?
- **4** What strategies can you use to make your writing sound polite?

Listening

EXAM STRATEGY

When you do a true / false / not given task, remember that you won't hear the exact words in the statements. Listen for the same ideas expressed in different ways.

- 1 Read the strategy above. Then read the statements in the exam task in Ex 2. <u>Underline</u> the key words, as in the first question, and think of different ways to express the same ideas.
- 2 (3) 6.09 You will hear a tour guide talking to a group of people at a place called Kelmscott Manor. Listen, and for each statement 1–10, write *T* (true), *F* (false) or *NG* (not given).
 - 1 The people on this tour will find out about the history of a house. ___
 - 2 The building they are visiting is now more than 500 years old. ____
 - 3 According to the tour guide, Thomas Turner was a well-known architect. ____
 - **4** George Turner died in the house during the 18th century. ____
 - 5 William Morris admired British artists. ____
 - 6 William Morris was concerned about environmental issues
 - 7 William Morris designed most of the furniture in the building. ____
 - 8 Morris' wife was an artist. ___
 - **9** News from Nowhere is a book by Morris about the history of his home. ____
 - **10** Oxford University bought the house from Morris's family in 1938. ____

Use of English

EXAM STRATEGY

When you do a word formation task, think about the different prefixes and suffixes you can add to each word and how these change its meaning and grammar.

3 Read the strategy above. Then look at the first word in brackets in the exam task in Ex 4. Which prefixes and suffixes can you add to it? How do these change the meaning and grammar of the word? Which is the correct word to fit the meaning and grammar of the gap?

4 Use the word given in brackets to form a word that fits in each gap 1–10.



The story of money

We have used mor	ney for thousands of years. That's why it
seems almost 1	(POSSIBLE) to believe that
we could soon bed	come a cashless society. But what is the
story behind the 2	(DEVELOP) of money
in the first place? N	Money is really just a way of swapping
	(CONVENIENT). Imagine that
two people each h	ave something that the other person
wants. They can sv	vap these things – but what happens
if one of them is m	
other one? When t	the idea of 'money' ⁵
	oped, ancient people swapped things
	animals. But of course they might
6(A(GREE) with each other about how
	nt things were really worth. This is
what led to the ⁷ _	(INVENT) of coins about
2,700 years ago. A	t first, they were made of silver or
gold, which meant	that only the richest people could use
	y was not used until hundreds of years
	TE). Today, money is very different; for
	ust a number in a bank account that we
	er. There are still some people who feel
more 9	(COMFORT) with 'real' money, but
it's ¹⁰	(LIKELY) that cash will be with us for
much longer.	

Reading

EXAM STRATEGY

When you have to match headings to the correct paragraphs, first read each paragraph and summarise what it says. Then see if any of the options match your ideas.

5 Read the strategy above and then read the first paragraph in the exam task in Ex 6. What are the main ideas in each sentence? Which option A–J matches these ideas?

72 Unit 6

6 Read the article about the world's most expensive buildings. Choose the most appropriate heading (A–J) for each paragraph 1-7. There are three extra headings which you do not need to use.

The world's most expensive buildings

When it was built in 2004, the 500-metre high Taipei 101 was the world's tallest building. Its lifts can travel at over 60 kilometres an hour! The island of Taiwan experiences many earthquakes, so Taipei 101 had to be specially built in case there is a major one in the next few years.

2

Fans of the film Furious 7 will recognise the outside of the most expensive hotel ever built. The five-star Emirates Palace Hotel in Abu Dhabi opened in 2006 and cost an incredible \$6 billion to complete. The hotel was designed to show Arabian culture to the rest of the world and the colours of the building are like those of different sands in the Arabian Desert.

The city of Las Vegas is well known for its amazing buildings, so it's no surprise to find one of the most expensive hotels in the world there. The Bellagio has over 3,000 rooms, and one of its ceilings is covered in more than 2,000 glass flowers which were made by hand. There are also many works by famous painters in the public areas.

The Bank of China (BOC) Tower is one of South-East Asia's most famous skyscrapers. Completed in 1990, it cost about \$1 billion - that's about \$2 billion in today's money. The building was the work of a Chinese-US architect and combines traditional Chinese design with a modern appearance. It has 70 floors and offers spectacular views of the city of Hong Kong.

In 2009, The City of Dreams opened in Macau, China at a cost of \$2.75 billion. This leisure destination is famous for its show The House of Dancing Water. It takes place in a theatre which holds around 2,000 people, with a pool the size of five Olympic swimming pools. Based around a love story, the show features a journey through time and has amazing special effects.

6

Wynn in Las Vegas is considered to be one of the world's best hotels. It has a total of nearly 5,000 rooms and its guests can enjoy a wide range of shops and top-quality restaurants. Wynn has featured in many TV shows and films, including the disaster movie 2012, and it was also home to Beyoncé's I Am ... Yours concert show.

7

Designed by a world-famous architect, the Marina Bay Sands in Singapore is the most expensive casino ever built. But a global financial crisis and rising costs meant that it opened a year later than hoped. As well as shops and restaurants, it has a theatre, a museum and a huge roof with a sky park and pool.

- A Where the old and the new come together
- **B** A man who made the impossible become possible
- C Strong enough to face the future?
- D A dream that never came true
- E Water-themed entertainment for a huge audience
- **F** An ideal destination for art lovers
- **G** How a worldwide problem caused a change of plan
- H A building whose appearance is inspired by its environment
- I Too many people, not enough time
- J A location good enough for a celebrity

Speaking

EXAM STRATEGY

When you compare two photos, don't just talk about what you can see in them. You will also need to speculate about the ideas suggested by the photos.

- 7 Read the strategy above. Before you read the exam task in Ex 8, think about the ideas and general topics of the photos and not just the details in them.
- 8 Work in pairs. These pictures show two different types of places where people live. Look at the pictures and talk about ...
 - the types of accommodation people live in.
 - · the general environment.
 - what people's everyday lives are like.





Writing

EXAM STRATEGY

When you have to write a reply to someone's email, make sure you read what they have written carefully and answer all their questions.

- 9 Read the strategy above. Then look at the exam task in Ex 10. How many different pieces of information will you need to include in your email to Lisa?
- Read this email from your English-speaking friend Lisa. Write your email to Lisa answering her questions.

From: Lisa

Subject: Saving money

I need to think about saving money and would like your advice. Do you think it's a good idea to open a bank account? What are the best things to save up for? Can you suggest some ways that I can spend less money? Let me know what you think!

Lisa

Learning for life





1 a What can you remember about the vlog? Answer the questions.

- 1 Where must you stay at school until you are nineteen?
- 2 How old was the youngest person ever to graduate from university?
- 3 How much does Institut Le Rosey cost per year?
- 4 Is listening to rock music a real subject in Iceland?

b P 7.01 Watch or listen again and check.

2 Match the words below to the definitions.

| boarding school certificate grade private school revise for state school term

- 1 a school that you have to pay to attend
- 2 a period of time you spend studying at school
- a piece of paper that shows you have achieved something _____
- 4 a school run by the government which is free to attend
- 5 a mark that shows the level you have achieved in your schoolwork _____
- 6 work you do to prepare for a test or exam
- 7 a school where students live as well as study

3 Match the sentence halves.

- 1 It will be harder to get a good job ____
- 2 I'll get a teaching job after I graduate ___
- 3 It's important to hand in ____
- 4 You need a password to log in ____
- 5 This learning platform lets you share ____
- 6 lalways get nervous before I sit ___
- 7 If you get good grades, you can win ____
- A your coursework on time.
- B resources with other students.
- C a place at university.
- **D** without any qualifications.
- E an exam.
- **F** from university.
- **G** to the school's online learning platform.

4 Complete the texts with the words below.

boarding school certificate grades graduate hand in online learning platform revising for share resources sit exams state school terms win

Naomi

'I go to a school in London for th	e performing arts – music,
theatre and dance. It's a 1	, so you don't
have to pay. We have three ²	in the
year, just like a normal school. W	le spend about half our time
learning to act, sing and dance,	but we also study the usual
school subjects and ³	at the end of the
year. I hope to 4	from the school in two
years' time, if my 5	are good enough.
The school will give me a 6	to help me
find work as an actor - that's my	dream.'

Hugo

'It's a private ⁷	– it's one of the best
	try. We train every day. All the
students have a tablet and w	e use them to log into the
school's 8	They're important for our
studies and our sport - they	allow us to ⁹
with each other and record of	our progress in training. And
of course, we use them to 10	our
coursework as well. It can be	hard work, especially mixing
sport with 11	exams at the end of the
year. But I really enjoy it and	I hope to 12
a place to study at university	when I leave.'

5 REAL ENGLISH Replace the <u>underlined</u> phrases in the dialogue with the phrases below.

Are you having a laugh? I'll say! No idea. That's news to me. You got it!

- **Ed** Did you hear that James is going to boarding school next year?
- **Amy** ¹I didn't know that. Why?
 - Ed ²I don't know. Maybe his parents think he'll get better grades.
- **Amy** I suppose his parents will have to pay a lot of money?
 - Ed ³That's correct. He says it's going to cost £35,000 a year.
- Amy What? ⁴You aren't being serious. That's a huge amount more than most people earn!
 - Ed ⁵I agree. Lucky James, eh?

6 VOCABULARY BOOSTER Now practise The education system vocabulary on page 110.

1	Choose the correct answer: A or B. 1. Most state schools seem similar subjects	4 Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.	
	1 Most state schools seem similar subjects.A teaching B to teach	Forest schools try ¹	
	2 I don't know anyone who enjoys exams.	(give) children an opportunity to	7
	A sitting B to sit	learn outdoors in the rain and	
	3 When you've finished that book, can I borrow it?	snow. But will parents let their	
	A reading B to read	children ² (stay)	4
	4 Lydia's parents have decided her to a private school.	outdoors in any weather? One	
	A sending B to send	mum, Ola Stenson from Denmark, used to go to forest school herself.	1/8/1
	5 Ethan and Mo have suggested for our exams together.	'I'll never forget ³ (build) houses in the wood	S
	A revising B to revise	and 4 (make) fires when I was a child, she say	ys.
	6 It's easier to learn when you're young.	Forest schools use child-centred learning, which allows	
	A swimming B to swim	kids ⁵ (discover) things for themselves.	
	7 Our school has agreed nature study to the	For example, they learn ⁶ (use) tools, and	
	curriculum.	7 (identify) animals and plants.	
	A adding B to add	Ola says, 'Kids don't stop 8 (learn) when they are outside. They really enjoy 9 (get) close	/
	8 Most of my friends avoid at the weekend.	to nature. It helps them 10 (get) close	
	A studying B to study	to nature. It helps them ¹⁰ (understand) the world. I hope they will remember ¹¹ (come) t	to
2	Choose the correct alternative.	forest school for the rest of their lives – like me!'	
0000	1 Our teacher told us hand in / to hand in our coursework		f
	on the last day of term.	5 Complete the question and reply with the correct form o the verbs below (infinitive with or without <i>to</i> , <i>-ing</i> form).	1
	2 No one will make you revise / to revise for your test, but		
	you won't pass unless you do the work.	continue decide gain learn make not take study take think win	
	3 The system won't allow you log in / to log in to the	Thouast study take think will	
	learning platform without the password.	A Q D	
	4 Kat and Chloe asked us share / to share our resources		
	and complete the project together.	Priti @priti234 I'm trying 1 which subjects to take for my	
	5 The school hopes offer / to offer extra sports classes to all students next year.	final three years at school. I get good grades in science	
	6 It's important to let children be / to be creative as well as	and my teachers have told me ² with these subjects. They say they'll help me ³ a place	e
	teaching them pass / to pass exams.	subjects. They say they'll help me ³ a place at university. However, I'd prefer ⁴ more	е
2		creative subjects that I enjoy 5, like art. My	,
3	Complete the sentences with one of the verbs below and the correct form of the verbs in brackets.	teachers don't seem ⁶ this is a good idea.	
		What should I do?	
	forget regret remember stop try	Maria85	
	1 Bukayo needs to (waste) time and get on	Replying to @priti234	
	with his studies.	It's important to avoid ⁷ the wrong choice. If you decide ⁸ subjects you enjoy, you'll	
	2 I hope you (turn off) the oven before you left the house.	have a good time doing this. On the other hand, you	
		may regret ⁹ your teachers' advice in the	
	3 We'll never (see) <i>Black Panther</i> for the first time – it was amazing!	future. It might be better to choose subjects that allow you	
	4 I've just (explain) Instagram to my	20 a qualification that leads to a good care. Only you know what's right for you.	er.
	grandmother, but she didn't really get it.	and the state of t	
	5 Zoe got a very low mark in her maths test – she	6 Complete the questions with the correct form of the verb	os
	(not / revise) for it.	below. Then write answers that are true for you.	
	6 My bike was making a strange noise so I	do make study visit	
	(check) what the problem was.	What would you prefer after you leave	
	7 The first time I sang in public was scary and I	school: get a job or go to university?	
	(feel) really nervous.		
	8 Oh, no! I (go) to a meeting with my teacher	2 Which places in your town do you enjoy?	
	this morning. (tall) you that your application for the	Why?	
	9 We (tell) you that your application for the job was not successful.		
	10 A My laptop has (work).	3 Which subject would you stop if your	
	B Why don't you (turn) it off and on again?	school allowed you to? Why?	
	turn, it on and on again:		_
		4 What is the worst mistake you remember	_?

7.3 LISTENING

1 What can you remember about the podcast in the Student's Book? Complete the sentences with the words below.

experiment instructions interested learned learning share

- 1 Professor Sugata Mitra set up a(n) ______ in Delhi with a computer in the street.
- 2 Children tried to use the computer although there were
- 3 After six months, most children had _____ use the computer.
- 4 The children were able to ______ their knowledge and help each other to learn.
- 5 Many people outside India were ____ Professor Mitra's experiment.
- 6 The School in the Cloud was set up to help schools and teachers provide online_



UNICEF is part of the United Nations and provides aid for children worldwide.



3.7 billion

is the number of people without internet access.

90%



of school-age children in rich countries have the internet at home.

- 2 Look at the photo and the infographic and think about the questions below.
 - 1 What are the reasons why people in some countries don't have access to the internet?
 - 2 How is life different for school-age children who don't have an internet connection at home?

STRATEGY Identifying the main idea

When you are listening to a longer text, it is easy to get lost in the different ideas people talk about. To distinguish the main idea from the subsidiary ones, listen out for words and phrases which are repeated more often.

3	7.02 Read the strategy. Listen to an interview
	discussing an education report by UNICEF. Match main
	ideas A-E to Parts 1-3 of the interview. There are two ideas
	you do not need.

Part 1 ____ Part 2 ____ Part 3

- A UNICEF is working to give young people across the world equal access to good-quality online learning.
- **B** People in richer countries tend to value education more highly.
- C Lack of internet access significantly limits children's education and opportunities.
- **D** The 'digital divide' is related to an economic gap between richer and poorer countries.
- **E** UNICEF is setting up new schools all over the world.

4 **3 7.02** Listen to all three parts again. Are the sentences true (T), false (F) or not given (NG)?

- 1 About two-thirds of the world's school-age children have no access to the internet at home. _
- 2 The digital divide does not affect students' educational opportunities. ____
- 3 The Covid-19 pandemic didn't affect children's learning if they had internet access. ___
- 4 Children from richer families have much better access to the internet than poor children.
- 5 Most governments are not willing to spend money on internet access in areas outside cities. _
- 6 Some families may not allow children to use the internet if they don't understand how it works. ____
- 7 Giga has asked technical companies to identify schools without internet access. _
- 8 Giga's work will improve education for millions of children worldwide.___

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs.

	aimed benefit depend lead prevent result specialise succeed
1	In a group project, making progress on everyone working together.
2	This course is at students with good English.
3	Hana has won a place at university to study history – she wants to in the post-war period.
4	Dan has failed his driving test three times, so I hope he in passing it next time.
5	Don't let other people's negative comments

- ____ you from doing what you want.
- 6 Lucy hopes gaining a qualification in translation will _____ to a job with the UN.
- 7 Young learners can often ____ _____ from working on projects with older students.
- 8 The increase in online learning could _____ in a shorter school week.

6 Complete the sentences with your own ideas.

- 1 The pros and cons of online learning at my school would
- 2 The most important way that technology helps me to
- 3 If I didn't have access to the internet at home, I would / wouldn't_

М	atch the words below to the definitions.	
	academic campus graduate	
	higher education lecture semester	
1	learning after school, usually at college or university	
2	a period of time at university lasting 15–18 weeks	
	relating to education and study	
4	a person who has completed a degree at university	
5	the grounds and buildings of a university	
6	an educational talk to students at a university	
М	hat subject do you think these students are studying? atch the university subjects below to the quotes.	
	economics engineering law literature philosophy politics psychology sociology	
1	'I've always been interested in how our minds work, and why people behave in certain ways.'	
2	'I love reading novels, plays and poetry – both traditional and modern.'	
3	'I'm interested in international trade and financial systems. I'd like to work in banking when I finish university.'	
4	'I enjoy learning about how governments work and make decisions, and what causes them to succeed or fail.'	
5	'I'm interested in the history of ideas. Why are we here? What does it mean to be human?'	
6	'Law and order is very important. I hope to be able to help people who are the victims of crimes.'	
7	'Society needs to do more for people with social problems, like poverty and homelessness.'	
8	'I love designing and building things. In the future, I want to be involved in the car industry.'	
	omplete the sentences with words from Ex 1 and 2.	
1	Kamila has two degrees – she's a of two different universities.	
2	If you want a career in international finance, it's useful to study at university.	
3	If you don't want to fail your exams, you should study	
4	A degree in is useful for lots of jobs, as it	
_	helps you to understand how people think and act.	
5	Since he graduated with a degree in, lan has worked for a company building roads and bridges.	
6	Over 30% of eighteen-year-olds in the UK enter each year.	
7	As a police officer, you need to know the rules of society,	

so studying _____ at university is good training.

4 Complete the dialogues with words from Ex 1 and 2.



Dialogue 1						
Tin	What's it like living on the university 1?					
	Great. Everything is within walking distance.					
Tin	What's that big white building?					
Be	That's where I have my ² I have one					
	now: 'An introduction to the history of ideas'.					
Tin	So you're studying ³ ?					
Be	That's right.					
Dia	logue 2					
Za	What are you reading this ⁴					
Mi	At the moment, I'm reading Julius Caesar – it's a play					
	by Shakespeare.					
Zal	• Oh, right – English ⁵ What's it about?					
Mi	Well, basically, how a great leader rose and fell in					
	Ancient Rome.					
Za	Hmm. If you want to know how governments work,					
	maybe you should study ⁶					
Complete the blog post with words from this lesson.						
	Home News feed Posts Videos Photos Friends					
	Rachel 2hr					
The	2020–2021 coronavirus pandemic happened during the					
second ¹ of my first year at university. I had always						
	wanted to be a journalist, and I was studying a course called PPE.					
	This combines three subjects: 2, where we studied					

_ subjects like mine. However, if is OK for the more 7_ you are doing a practical subject like 8_ _, where you have to work with other people to design and make things, it's much more difficult. Like O Comment 6 Complete the sentences using words from this lesson and your own ideas. 1 The subjects I would enjoy studying are __ because ___ 2 I'd like a career in ____ _____, so it would be useful to study ___ 3 It's important to know about ___ because.

ideas about the meaning of human life, 3_

understanding of the way governments work and 4_

to learn about the finance system and international trade. Life was difficult at first. We weren't allowed to move around on the 5 ______ – there was a message that told all students to stay in their rooms. The university didn't let us attend our

our teachers or other students face to face. I think studying online

_; we had to watch them online. We couldn't meet

7 VOCABULARY BOOSTER Now practise Higher education vocabulary on page 110.

, to get an

7.5 GRAMMAR

1	Choose	the	correct	alte	rnative.
---	--------	-----	---------	------	----------

- 1 I wish I could / would concentrate on learning this.
- 2 If only we go / had gone to a different school.
- 3 If only my parents **would stop** / **stopped** trying to plan my life.
- 4 We wish we **knew** / **would know** more English words.
- 5 I wish my flatmate **won't borrow** / **wouldn't borrow** my clothes without asking.
- 6 If only I didn't have to / don't have to hand in my coursework on Friday.
- 7 I wish there was / would be a swimming pool on the university campus.
- 8 If only I **took** / **could take** my exams next semester.

2 Write sentences using the prompts.

- Anna finds it hard to study on her own.
 Anna / wish / have / someone to study with.
- 2 Nathalie says we've met before. I wish / I / remember / meeting her.
- 3 They've been playing music all night. If only / someone / tell them / stop.
- 4 Tom's friends are going to the beach this weekend. Tom / wish / not have to / work this weekend.
- Liam's laptop is broken again.Jake / wish / Liam / not keep asking / borrow / laptop.
- 6 I want to watch a lecture online, but I don't have a password.
 If only / I / log in to / the university's learning platform.
- **3** Write at least two sentences beginning with *I wish* or *If only* based on these students' complaints.
 - My housemate never does any food shopping. He's always using my coffee, and he never replaces it.

I share a flat with three of the laziest girls in the world. I always end up doing the cleaning because they won't. They can't see how annoying it is.

My friend is always asking to borrow money from me. She never remembers to pay me back until I ask her to. Now I feel like I don't want to spend time with her.

4	The bus we take to go to school is always late.
	The driver is unfriendly and never apologises.
	Unfortunately, there is only one bus a day.
	,

I share a bedroom with my brother. He often plays computer games until very late at night, and it keeps me awake. I've asked him not to do it, but he never remembers.

4 Complete the dialogues with *would* or *could* and/or the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

Dialogue 1

5

Lee	So do you enjoy stud	ying philosophy?
Raj	Not really. The subject	ct is OK, but I wish the lecturers _ (think) about what it's like for
	foreign students.	
Lee	What do you mean?	
Raj	Well, I wish they ²	(not speak)

Raj	Well, I wish they ²	(not speak)
	so fast - it's hard to make note	es. They can't work the
	technology - if only someone	3
	(show) them how to share the	ir slides. And the
	other students chat during led	tures. I wish they
	4(have) a	a bit more respect. If only
	15(chang	ge) to another course!

Dialogue 2

Abi Are you enjoying the par	tv/2

- Priti I'm a bit bored, to be honest. If only there

 (be) more people here I knew.
- **Abi** Well, ... at least you know me! But I'm leaving in a minute.
- Priti That's a shame. If only you ⁷______(stay) longer.
- Abi | wish | 8 (not / have to) go so soon, but ...
- Priti Oh, no! Ade's playing the same song AGAIN! I wish he

 (not / keep) doing that.
- **Abi** Yeah, it's really annoying. If only he (have) better taste in music!
- **5** Write three sentences that are true for you. For example, think about ...
 - something you'd like to do / don't want to do.
 - · somewhere you'd like to be.
 - something you'd like someone (not) to do.
 - 1 If only / I wish I (didn't) _____
 - 2 If only / I wish I could ______ would / wouldn't3 If only / I wish _____ would / wouldn't

1 What can you remember about the blog posts in the Student's Book? Match the people to their experiences.

	Dominika Mihail Tom
1	studied in Italy and learned that she/he
	could do more than they realised.
2	spent a semester in Slovenia improving
	her/his English, and learned that making mistakes is Ok
3	went to Russia for a year and found that
	people from different cultures have similar values.

- 2 **7.03** Read the three texts quickly. Match one statement to each text. There are two statements you do not need.
 - A 'Education can change your life.'
 - B 'Working hard will always make you successful.'
 - C 'Money isn't the most important thing in life.'
 - **D** 'Don't let others stop you doing what you love.'
 - **E** 'Everyone should be able to go to university.'



____ Jamie, 26 I always wanted to be a chef, but the teachers at my school thought it was a bad idea. My parents expected me to go to university – it didn't matter which subject I studied, so long as it was well respected. So I

decided to do economics. I hated it and was getting bad grades. So, one of my lecturers suggested taking a year off. I decided to go to France and work in a restaurant. I learned so much in a two-year stay! Now I'm back home, I got a bank loan and I recently opened my own place. I work crazy hours, I'm not rich, but I don't care. I wish people wouldn't tell kids they can't do something. You can do anything if you really want to.



____ Anoushka, 24 When I was growing up, my parents didn't have a lot of money, and life was sometimes difficult. They encouraged me to study hard at school so that one day I would be able to get a well-paid job. I had friends, but

I didn't go out much. I was ambitious and self-confident, and I spent most of my time studying. At eighteen, I won a place at university to study law and moved away from my home town. Now I have a great job, but I work fifteen hours a day. I haven't tried to keep in touch with my old classmates, but I follow them on social media. Sometimes when I see them having fun, I wish I was more easy-going. I have a nice lifestyle, but I often feel lonely. Sometimes I wonder what I worked so hard for.



Leon, 25 At school, I wasn't interested – and didn't sit any exams. After I left, I took any work I was offered – it was often boring and badly paid! But one job was gardening for an old guy, who was really well educated.

Sometimes he'd chat to me and we talked about life and the world. Soon he began lending me books – and I remember thinking, there are all these ideas I didn't know about! It made me want to go back to school, then higher education. I gained a qualification as a social worker. Now I work with kids like me – it's a great job. I tell them how important education is – because for me, it was life-changing.

STRATEGY Inferring information

When you read a text, you may need to both understand information that a writer states AND infer or deduce information that the writer does not directly state. To do this, you will need to use the clues that are in the text and your own knowledge and skills.

- 3 Read the strategy above. Choose the most likely answer: A or B.
 - 1 Jamie's lecturer suggested taking a year off because ...
 - A she realised he was doing the wrong course.
 - B she was worried he would fail the course.
 - 2 Jamie doesn't mind not making much money because ...
 - A he borrowed money from the bank.
 - B he loves what he does.
 - 3 Anoushka worked hard at school because her parents ...
 - A needed her to make money for the family.
 - **B** wanted her to have a better life than they had.
 - 4 Anoushka often feels lonely because ...
 - A she doesn't have much time to socialise.
 - B all her friends are in her home town.
 - **5** After school, Leon did low-paid jobs because ...
 - A he didn't enjoy academic work.
 - **B** he had no qualifications and needed cash.
 - 6 Leon enjoys being a social worker because ...
 - A he can help young people improve their lives.
 - B it's a well respected job.
- 4 Match a word from A and a word from B to make compound adjectives from the text.

A easy- life-	self- tv	vo- well	
B changing respected		educated	going
1	_	4	
2	_	5	
3	_	6	

5 Complete the sentences with the compound adjectives from Ex 4

111	JIII EX 4.
1	Kamal spent a year doing charity work – it was a experience for him.
2	Zahra is and has qualifications from several universities.
3	Everyone looks up to my Aunt Jo – she's a writer.
4	I wish I could be like Ashok – he'sand never gets stressed.
5	If you are and believe in yourself, you can achieve anything.
6	Most courses take three academic years, but some offer degrees.

6 MEDIATION A friend has sent you the following message. Think of three pieces of advice to write a short reply. Use information from this lesson.

You know I want to be an actor. My parents want me to study an academic subject at university, like literature or a foreign language. If I agree, they will pay for my studies, but not if I choose acting. What should I do?

7.7 GLOBAL SKILLS

- **1** What can you remember about the article in the Student's Book? Are the sentences true (*T*) or false (*F*)?
 - 1 We are able to remember information because neurons in the brain make connections with each other. ____
 - 2 Using different senses makes no difference to how we learn and remember things. ____
 - 3 Our brains find it easier to remember new information when it is connected to what we already know. ____
 - 4 Recalling a piece of information many times helps to make the memory stronger. ____
 - 5 The more information you receive at one time, the easier it is to remember it. ____
 - 6 The best way to learn is to study a little and often, and revise what you have studied. ____
- 2 Read the online comments about the difficulties some students have when studying. Match one of the statements (1–7) to each student. There are two statements you do not need.

This person ...

- 1 needs to manage their time more effectively.
- 2 gets distracted when they study with other people.
- 3 listens to music while studying.
- 4 doesn't review their notes when they get home.
- 5 might learn better if they studied a little and often.
- 6 takes too many breaks while studying.
- 7 would benefit from joining a study group. _

Forum

School > Studying > Your comments



I always take a lot of notes in class - but then I don't read what I've written for a few days, and I can't understand anything!

Rory



I do loads of sport after school, so there isn't much time for homework - and even when I do have free time, I feel too tired to study.

Jess



Lavla

I do most of my homework at the weekend but I wonder whether I would get better grades if I did a small amount of work every day and took more breaks.



I find working on my own incredibly boring - it's much easier to learn at school, when you can share ideas with your classmates.

Ali



I often study with friends - Mum won't let us listen to music, but we spend a lot of time laughing at stuff on our phones and don't get much work done!

add new comment here

- 3 Complete tips 1–5 with one of the groups of words A–E below.
 - A avoid, distracted, periods, regular
 - B analyse, discuss, note, relate
 - C minutes, overload, revising, senses
 - D notes, questions, recalling, remember
 - E free time, manage, week, schedule

Five ways to improve your study habits

Make connections

Take	of new ideas. Think about and
	new information and
it to what yo	ou already know. Join a study group and
	what you are learning.

2

Make a plan

Try to	your time effe	ctively. Look at
what you do in your		and plan when
you are going to stud	y. Then	time for
revising and time for		each day.

3

Keep focused

Study for short	t of	time and take
	breaks. Turn off yo social media. Find	
study alone so	you aren't	by other
people.		

4

Look after your brain

Study each subject for	a few every
day. Start by	what you've recently
studied. Don't	your brain with too
much information. Mo	ove around and use different
when y	ou study.

5

Revise regularly

Practise	ctise information you have	
learned. Look at your _	when you get	
home and ask yourself	to check	
you understand them.	It's important to revise	
information regularly if you want to		it

4 Which	tips in Ex 3	would be usefu	ul for each stud	ent in Ex 2
---------	--------------	----------------	------------------	-------------

Rory:		
Jess:		
Layla:		
Ali:		
Mari:		

5 Think about your own study habits. What do you do well and what could you do better? Make a note of the good study habits from the lesson you would like to use. Then write a list of the things you will do to improve the way you study in future.



- 1 How do you feel when you have to take an exam? Do you think exams are the best way to measure what you have learned?
- 2 Read the statement and the script, ignoring the gaps. Answer the questions.
 - 1 Does Toby think exams are good or bad?
 - 2 What two arguments does Kate present supporting the statement?
 - 3 Why does Toby say exams help you to understand about 'the real world'?
 - 4 According to Kate, what is the point of education?
 - 5 What system does Kate suggest instead of exams?
 - 6 Does Toby agree or disagree with her? Why?

	'We should stop using exams to measure students' learning.'
Toby	So, ¹ I disagree with the statement. I'm absolutely convinced that exams are the best and fairest way to measure students' progress.
Kate	That may have been true once, but it isn't true anymore. There are two points I'd like to mention. 2, sitting exams is extremely
	stressful for many students. Secondly, exams don't actually measure what you've learned about a subject – they just show how good you are at learning to pass exams.
Toby	exams aren't only about testing what you know. They also help you to understand about success in the real world.
Kate Toby	I'm not with you. 4 I think if you have to pass
	an exam to get to university or gain a qualification, it makes you try harder. Exams make you more competitive. ⁵ life is a competition. That's fairly obvious.
Kate	6 I don't think you need to fail an exam to understand that. The point of education is to discover new things and enjoy learning. And besides, there are definitely better ways to measure progress than testing.
Toby Kate	What I mean is the best person to decide what grades you should get is your teacher. Why not have a system where teachers give students grades based on the coursework they've done over the year?
Toby	I'm not saying coursework isn't important. It certainly is important. But we should think carefully about what's fair too. 8 if everyone does the

same exam, at the same time, they all have an equal chance of succeeding. You can't argue with that.

3 **(a) 7.04** Complete the script with the useful phrases below. Then listen and check.

and there's no doubt that first of all, how do you mean? it's true to say that let me put it another way. that's a good point, but the first thing I'd like to say is you may be right, but

4	Match phrases 1–8 in the script with functions A–E. Find
	one more phrase in the script for each function.

Α	Expressing certainty
В	Giving clarification
C	Presenting an argument
D	Asking for clarification
Ε	Countering an argument

STRATEGY Using adverbs to add emphasis

When we have a debate or discussion, we often add adverbs into sentences to emphasise an argument or stress or soften our opinion.

This is **absolutely** the right thing to do.

As far as I'm concerned, I don't think this is **particularly** useful.

5 Read the strategy above. <u>Underline</u> at least six adverbs in the script. Is each one used to strengthen or soften?

1 _	
2 _	
3 _	
4 _	
5 _	
_	

- 6 **7.05 PRONUNCIATION** Look at the <u>underlined</u> sounds and decide how they are pronounced. Then listen and check
 - 1 it makes you try harder
 - 2 f<u>a</u>il <u>a</u>n ex<u>a</u>m
 - 3 grades based on coursework
 - 4 have an equal chance
 - 5 you can't argue with that
- 7 You are going to write a script of a similar discussion. Use one of the statements in the Student's Book, one of the statements below, or your own ideas.

'Everyone should take a gap year between school and university.'

'Doing sport at school is just as important as studying academic subjects.'

- 8 Think about different arguments for and against the statement. Make notes. Decide which useful phrases you will use, and which adverbs you will use to emphasise or soften the arguments.
- **9** Write your script. When you have finished, check that you have ...
 - used phrases to present and counter arguments.
 - used phrases to ask for and give clarification.
 - used adverbs to emphasise or soften your arguments.

7.9 WRITING

- 1 Read the essay task. Which of the following are arguments for the statement and which are arguments against it?
 - 1 It isn't the same experience as being on a university campus.
 - 2 Students can learn anywhere in the world.
 - **3** It's more suitable for students who are good independent learners.
 - 4 Students aren't able to work closely with others.
 - 5 It's more flexible for students who have a job.
 - 6 It's cheaper than face-to-face teaching.

Write an essay discussing the arguments for and against this statement: 'Online learning should replace face-to-face teaching for all university courses'.

2 Read the essay quickly and check your ideas from Ex 1.

Most universities offer some form of online learning. It is clearly a way to support more traditional methods of teaching, but is it a sensible idea to replace all lectures and group work with an online course?

¹Overall, the main advantage of online learning is that it lets people study anywhere, at any time, including in another country. It is usually less expensive than studying on a typical university campus, so ²clearly it can help students on a limited budget to gain a qualification without getting into debt. ³Needless to say, it also makes it easier to work and study at the same time.

⁴In reality, though, online learning isn't suitable for everyone. ⁵The fact of the matter is you need to be able to study independently without getting distracted. It's also true that students miss out on some elements of the 'university experience'. ⁶In other words, they get less personal attention from lecturers, and don't benefit from working closely with their classmates.

⁷To a certain extent, online learning is a realistic alternative to face-to-face teaching, but not for all courses. For subjects where students must learn specific skills, such as medicine or engineering, instruction from lecturers and the opportunity to practise are essential.

⁸In general, therefore, I don't believe online learning should replace traditional learning methods.

STRATEGY Planning an essay

When you are planning a for and against essay, it's important to follow a clear structure.

- 1 Start with a general statement that shows your understanding of the topic, or a brief introduction to both sides of the argument.
- 2 Present the arguments for the statement, including explanations and examples if required.
- 3 Present the arguments against the statement, including explanations and examples if required.
- 4 Finish with a summary of the arguments and your opinion.

3 Read the strategy. Then read the essay again and complete the essay plan notes.

1	OL can support but not 1 traditional teaching methods.	
2	For: - People can study ² and when the want to. - It's less expensive than studying on a typical	ey
	- It's easier to 4 and study at the same time.	
3	Against: - Students must be able to 5 - Lecturers don't give students 6 - Students don't benefit from 7 with classmates.	
+	Conclusion: OL is not an alternative to 8 It should not 9	

- **4** Look at the <u>underlined</u> words and phrases 1–8 in the essay. Match them to functions A–E.
 - A making general statements _____
 - **B** introducing facts _____
 - C adding emphasis _____
 - **D** saying something is partially true ____
 - **E** explaining or clarifying a statement ___
- **5** Look at the words and phrases below. Which <u>underlined</u> words and phrases in the essay could they replace?
 - 1 it is obvious that
 - 2 to put it another way
 - 3 it is true to say that
 - 4 generally speaking
 - 5 up to a point
- **6** You are going to write a for and against essay. Choose one of the statements from the Student's Book or the one below.

'Studying maths and sciences is more useful than studying art and literature.'

- **7** Plan your essay and decide what you will write in each paragraph. Use the essay plan in the strategy to help you. Think about ...
 - 1 what you will say in your opening general statement.
 - 2 your arguments for the statement, including explanations and examples.
 - **3** your arguments against the statement, including explanations and examples.
 - 4 what you will say in the conclusion.
 - 5 which phrases from the Phrasebook you will use.
- 8 Write your essay.
- 9 CHECK YOUR WORK Did you ...
 - follow the plan: opening statement, arguments for, arguments against and summary / opinion?
 - · include relevant useful phrases?
 - check your spelling, grammar and punctuation?

Grammar

1		omplete tl ackets.	he dialogues with the correc	t form of the verbs in	
	1		Why don't we stop	(take) the bus to	
			school? It's always late.	(******)	
		Chris	Fine. I prefer	(cycle) anyway.	
	2		I hope our teacher doesn't r		
			(us / go) outside in this rain.		
		Mum	Maybe she'll allow	(you / stay)	
			indoors today.		
	3	Dan	My dad's trying	_ (learn) Spanish, but	
			he's finding it hard.		
		Geeta	Why don't you suggest	(use) that new	
			language learning app?		
	4	Lily	Did you remember		
			cousin to the party on Satur	day?	
		Alex	Yes, but I don't think he'll co	me – he doesn't enjoy	
			(meet) new p		
	5	Rose	Our art teacher has asked _	(us / share	
			our coursework.		
		Kamili	I know – I've decided		
			the school's social media pa	ige.	
	6	Ryan	Is it true you've agreed	(take part) in	
			a 10 km race?		
		George	Yes, but now I regretrunning!	(say) yes – I hate	
2	Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first sentence.				
	1	I never ha	ave enough time to do my co	ursework.	
		I wish	,		
	2		ys wanted to play basketball	as well as my friends	
		but I can'		as mondo my mondo,	
		Ifonly			
	3	-	er is always borrowing my clo	thes. I want him to stop.	
	4		en't many open spaces near c	our house	
		If only		, at the doc.	
	5	-	never lets me go out with he	r and her friends	
	5	If only	0	and her mends.	
	6	,	remember meeting my great	t grandmother but I	
	0	was too y	0 , 0	t-grandinother, but i	
		I wish			
				•	
V	oc	abular	y		
3	Cł	noose the	correct alternative.		
	1	Elif is a tea	acher – she gained her exam /	qualification in the USA	

- - 2 My dad has my high school **certificate** / **grade** on the wall in his study.
 - 3 In most countries, education in **boarding** / **state** schools is free.
 - 4 My parents will be proud if I **graduate** / **win** from university.
 - 5 This online learning platform allows teachers to hand in / share resources with students.
 - 6 Soroush was getting very low **exams** / **grades**, so his parents hired a private tutor to help him.
 - 7 When you have finished your science project, you can hand it in / revise for it online.
 - 8 Soraya hopes to win a **place** / **study** at university to study French and Spanish.

4	Comp	lete the	sentences	with	the word	ds be	low.
---	------	----------	-----------	------	----------	-------	------

1	academic campus lectures psychology	economics semester	graduates			
1	Many famous people Cambridge.	e are	of Oxford or			
2	The university posts online.	some of its				
3	Adam studied and politics at Harvard University.					
4	We have to sit our fin	al exams at th	ne end of next			
5	Lecturers are membe staff.	ers of a univers	ity's			
6	Jane is a professor of a book about the tee		_ and has written			
7	Our university the city centre.	is abo	out 5 km outside			
ur	nulative review	,				

5	Complete the text with one wor	rd	in	each	g	ар.
	Vou're in your final 1		2+	ccha	ما	V

You're in you	ır final	at school, you v	/e
worked hard	d and you have a ² _	to stu	udy
at university	in the autumn. In a	a few weeks, you'll	
3	your last exam.	But you're thinking	Ξ,
'If only I 4		I've chosen the rig	
subject'.			,
Don't worry.	In higher 5		it
	e subject you study	that is important.	
	makes sense to ch		if
	be a lawyer. If you		''
	poetry, literature is p		COURSE
for you.	oeti y, iiterature is i	probably the right	Course
	بيمان ما ما النبية معاملات	. 8	
	bjects will help you		
	ls that are useful in		
	lve group projects,		
	together with ot		
	doesi		u tor
	overnment – it teac		
	argument for some		
	is not just		
	also lets you ¹³	your abi	lity to
	solve problems.		
	sities have samples		
	ust log onto their ¹⁴		
	see them. Find out		
	for many different		
stop	and focus	on revising for you	ur
exams!			

REFLECT Think about the following questions.

- 1 Which lesson in this unit did you enjoy the most? Why?
- 2 Which of the grammar points did you find most difficult?
- 3 How can you apply the strategy of inferring information to your own listening and reading?
- 4 What should you do before writing a for and against essay?

8.1 VOCABULARY



More than one way

to earn a living



1 a What can you remember about the vlog? Complete the summaries with one word in each gap. The first letter is given.

When Daniel applied for a job at a tech company, he sent them an ¹ u t d
CV and got brilliant ² r from his teachers. His mum helped him to practise by asking him ³ r
interview questions. Daniel tried to ⁴ s
o from the crowd, but he didn't get the job.
He started his own website and was ⁵ h by a
big international company.
Camilla saw that a new restaurant was looking for staff. She had the necessary ^{6}q and she completed an ^{7}a online. Camilla got the job, and the monthly ^{8}s was excellent. But she forgot to ^{9}r the job description in detail – the job was in a restaurant 1,500 km away. The ice cream shop where Alicia works was ^{10}h
ice cream sellers. A girl came into the shop to ask about the job. She didn't have an 11 a and wanted an interview straight away. She thought it was an easy job – she asked about the 12 h rate and when she would receive her 13 w

- **b 0** 8.01 Watch or listen again and check.
- 2 Choose the correct alternative.
 - 1 You can't usually see the doctor unless you have a(n) description / appointment.
 - 2 Have you ever been asked random interview / candidate questions?
 - 3 Rachel was so good at her job that a big company **headhunted** / **reviewed** her.
 - 4 Remember to complete an application form / review the job description to find out what the job involves.
 - 5 Having an unusual hobby might help you stand out against the other **employers** / **candidates**.
 - 6 Badrey won't get the job if he doesn't have the necessary qualifications / an application form.
 - 7 It isn't a well-paid job the **monthly salary** / **hourly rate** is only about 1,000 euros.
 - 8 Before they hire you, they'll contact your former employer to get an up-to-date CV / a reference.

3 (9 8.02) Complete the information with words and phrases from the previous exercises. Then listen and check.

CENTRAL UNIVERSITY	About us	Studying	Careers	Q
Get that job!				
right information. It's im	y is looking make sure	that it cont	or send an ains the ave all the	ne
information about you - hobby. This can help yo other candidates	a travel ex	perience o		ting
If they decide to ⁶ tell the receptionist that The interviewers will as and work experience. T	k you about	n ⁷ t your educ llso ask sor	ne	and
If the company wants to will probably contact yo in order to ¹¹ usually include informat to check the ¹²	ur previous ———	A job adve noney, but i	_ you, they rtisement v t's a good i ou accept a	vill dea

4 REAL ENGLISH Replace the <u>underlined</u> phrases in the dialogue with the phrases below.

are you having me on blew my chances got it wrong having a good laugh I swear tough luck

- A How was your interview?
- **B** Terrible. I ¹<u>wasted the opportunity</u> at the end.
- A ²Are you trying to make believe something that isn't true? You're perfect for that job.
- B ³I promise it's true. They asked me about my boss ...
- A The one you don't get on with?
- **B** Yes, I said some rude things about him. But then they told me he used to work with them.
- A Oh, 4 am sorry for you.
- B Yes. It's my fault I ⁵made a mistake.
- A You didn't know he was their friend.
- **B** I know. But it was stupid. They're probably ⁶laughing at me right now.
- **5 VOCABULARY BOOSTER** Now practise **Job application** vocabulary on page 111.

	Tick (✔) the correct sentences and rewrite the incorrect sentences.	4 I (work) part-time in a café for a couple of summers. We
	1 Jess used to work in her previous job for six months.	(not / receive) our wages weekly – the owner
		(pay) us in cash daily.
	Other companies are always trying to headhunt our	5 When I (be) a student, I
	staff – it's very annoying.	(share) a house with three other people. One of my housemates was really lazy – he
		(leave) the house whenever we did
	We would live in the city, but we moved to the	any cleaning.
	countryside three years ago.	6 Maisie (play) the piano for
	When I was at school, I wouldn't enjoy reading, but now I	years before she decided to learn the guitar instead.
	love it.	She (love) playing, and she (spend) hours practising every day.
	My workmates and I will often start the day with a short	4 Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. More than one answer may be possible.
	meeting.	Studies in the chart one answer may be possible.
	I used to fail my maths exam three times.	
	rused to fait my matris exam timee times.	
	7 My uncle used to visit us, and he would often bring us	L BEARSON OF
	presents.	
	3 I'm glad Steph has stopped working at the sports centre –	
	she will always take very long lunch breaks when we were	
	really busy!	
_		
	Complete the sentences using the prompts in brackets. More than one answer may be possible.	
	1 My friend (always ask) me for help	
	with his coursework – it drives me crazy!	1 (work) in a big, noisy office. It was my first
	Ali (do) badly in exams, but these	iob after I left school and I ² (not / enjoy) it.
	days he regularly gets top marks.	job after I left school and I 2 (not / enjoy) it. Some of the people who worked there 3 (be) quite irritating. For example, one guy 4 (sing)
	3 Mimi's family (move) house five	quite irritating. For example, one guy 4 (sing)
	times before she was ten years old.	to himself while he was working. People 5
	When we go out, Ruben (sometimes pretend) he's forgotten his wallet so he doesn't have to pay.	(spend) hours on social media when they were meant to be working. And everyone ⁶ (steal) pens and
	5 Dom often plays games on his phone in class – he	paper from the office. After a few months, I decided I'd
	(always get) into trouble for it.	prefer to work for myself, so I left.
	6 My friends and I went to the beach a lot last summer – we	Now I 7 (work) from home. My business is
	(spend) hours swimming in the sea.	going well, and the phone 8(constantly / ring)
	7 My sister (sing) loudly in the	with enquiries from new clients. However, it isn't perfect. One client ⁹ (insist) on emailing me with
	shower – I wish she would be quiet!	urgent questions very late in the evening. My housemate
	When you were little, (you / buy) ice	(always / interrupt) me to ask if I want a
	cream when you went to the park?	coffee. Friends 11 (forever / phone) me for a
	Complete the short texts about past habits with one	chat, even though they know I'm working. But when I think
	example each of <i>used to</i> , <i>would</i> and the past simple.	about the things I ¹² (find) annoying when I worked in the office, I realise it isn't so bad.
	1 I (live) in a flat in London. The neighbour downstairs (play) loud	
	music most nights. I (suffer) for	5 Complete the sentences so they are true for you. Think
	three months before I complained.	about
	A My brother Bill (work) for two	hobbies you used to have when you were younger.books you used to enjoy.
	years in a busy office. He(often	things online or on TV you find annoying.
	stay) late after his colleagues went home.	 things of the people do or say that irritate you.
	B Why did he (do) that?	1 used to, but now
	A I think he enjoyed the peace and quiet.	, 30011001
	My grandfather (be) a farmer. Each morning he (get up) at 4.00 a.m. to	2 In the past, I would often
	feed the animals. He (get up) at 4.00 a.m. to	3 After school, I'll sometimes
	day for 40 years.	4 It's quite annoying, but I'm

1 What can you remember about the stories in the Student's Book? Complete the sentences with the phrases below.

accepted things ask questions average interview fun and enthusiasm good employees important decisions necessary knowledge personality tests random question solve problems

first – he thought they wouldn't make ______.Which of these things should you do / not do at or before a job interview? Write Do or Don't.

costume she wore because the interviewers were looking for

someone who could bring ______ to the job.

of people who _____ without testing them

Speaker 5 talked about Henry Ford, who didn't approve



1	research the company online.
2	avoid asking questions.
_	0 ,
3	arrive before the time of your appointment
4	talk as much as possible.
5	use positive body language.
6	dress smartly.
7	interrupt the interviewer.
8	ask about money.
9	turn off your phone.
10	be negative about a previous employer.
11	prepare questions to ask.
12	talk about your qualifications.

- 3 **8.03** Listen to a careers adviser talking to students about how to prepare for and behave in an interview. Which of the items in Ex 2 does she mention?
- 4 ® 8.03 Listen to each part again and number the following points in the order they are mentioned.

Da	rt	1
Рα	ıι	т

Practise the interview with someone you know	
Learn as much about the company as possible	
Prepare some questions to ask	
Review the job description carefully	
Think of questions the interviewers might ask	

Part 2	
Listen carefully to each question	
Avoid being negative about a previous employer	
Arrive early for the interview	
Ask a couple of questions	
Think about your body language.	

STRATEGY Identifying different types of linking words

When someone talks, the events and ideas are connected by different types of linking words which serve different purposes, for example, to show ...

- contrast: although, even though, though, yet, despite, in spite of, whereas, however.
- reason and result: since, because, because of, as, so.
- sequencing: after, before, then, later, next.
- examples: for instance, for example, such as, like.
- 5 8.04 Read the strategy above. Then listen to extracts 1–8 and for each choose the correct answer A–D to describe the relationship. Then note down the word or phrase that tells you this.

Α	Contrast	C	Sequencing
В	Reason and result	D	Examples

Extract	Relationship	Word or phrase
1		
2		
3		
4		
5		
6		
7		
8		

6 MEDIATION Your friend has messaged you to say they are going to have a job interview. They have asked you for some advice. Choose three or four things from this lesson that you think would help your friend. Then write a reply.

1 Choose the most likely alternative.

arrest

- 1 To prevent a **burglary** / **vandalism** at your home, make sure you lock all your doors and windows.
- 2 Someone stole David's bag on a crowded train, but a witness / pickpocket saw the crime and told the police.
- 3 Lying about how much money you have in order to avoid paying tax is a **crime** / **theft**.
- 4 There was an investigation / a robbery at the 24-hour petrol station last night money was stolen, but no one was hurt.
- 5 Tom's bike was taken by a **pickpocket** / **thief** from outside his house.
- 6 Have you seen that **shoplifters** / **vandals** have broken all the windows in that old building?
- 7 The job of the police is to prevent crime and catch suspects / criminals.
- 8 Stealing food from a supermarket is a typical example of **shoplifting / robbery**.
- 2 Match a verb from A and a noun from B to make seven collocations. You need to use some words more than once.

break commit confess to

	A	interview	launch	report	
	Œ	a crime a so an investiga			
	1				
	2				
	3				
	4				
	5				
	6				
	7				
3	Yo	omplete the sentences wo ou may need to change t entences.			
		In the US you can police by phoning 911.			
	2	Police the believe are responsible			
	3	In many cities in the UK			the
	4	If you a se sent to prison.	erious	, yc	ou may be
	5	When a lot of money we an happened.			
	6	The police had no suspe a local man contacted t			
	7	When policeusually present to help to			

4 Complete the news reports with the words below.

committed interviewed launched pickpockets reported suspects thefts witnesses

al people
have ould like

arrested burglar committing crime criminals shoplifting vandalism

Local police are concerne	ed about a recent increase in teenage
9 in the to	own. This includes ¹⁰ ,
	orking together to steal clothes from
local stores. 11	, like painting graffiti on buildings
is also common. Often, p	eople who become 12
as adults start by ¹³	smaller crimes when they
	ay progress to breaking into houses,
but being a 14	is more serious: if you are
vou car	n be sent to prison.

5 8.05 Complete this extract from an interview with a police officer with words from this lesson in the correct form. Then listen and check your ideas.

Reporter	What happens when someone pho to 1 a crime? For example, a crime? For example, a calling to report a 2 a	mple, if they are
Officer	We ³ an investigation	to gather
	more information. We try to find even the 4 has left at the se	
Reporter	Why is that important?	
Officer	Because you can't ⁵ s	someone
	without evidence, or unless you have	ve a good
	reason to believe they have 6	the
	law. Or unless they ⁷	to a crime,
	which is very unusual!	
Reporter	OK. So what happens next?	
Officer	Usually we'll try to find 8	who
	may have seen something importa them. We need info	
	helps us to identify suspects.	
Reporter	Then you can arrest the suspects.	
Officer	Yes, if we're quite sure they ¹⁰ crime.	the

- **6** Choose one of the questions below and write two or three sentences to answer it.
 - 1 What famous crimes have you read about or seen on TV / online? Did the police catch the criminals?
 - 2 What do you think are the good and bad things about working as a police officer?
 - 3 Do you think it's ever OK for a person to break the law? Why? / Why not?
- 7 VOCABULARY BOOSTER Now practise Crime vocabulary on page 111.

1 Choose the correct alternative.

- 1 We were going to invite / were inviting you to the party, but we thought you were away.
- 2 Tomas thought someone had stolen his bike and would call / was about to call the police when he remembered a friend had borrowed it.
- 3 Going into the exam, I hoped I wasn't forgetting / wouldn't forget everything I had revised.
- 4 The detective was to have interviewed / was about to interview us that evening, but he never came.
- 5 The police were about to launch / were launching an investigation into a number of robberies when someone confessed to the crimes.
- 6 I'm sorry you couldn't be here when Ade and Mia were visiting they were hoping to see / were going to see you before they left.
- 2 Complete the sentences with the words below.

about going have was wasn't were would wouldn't



	1	I going to clear up the house after the burglary, but the police said they needed to collect some more evidence.
	2	We hoping to have lunch in the garden, but unfortunately it started to rain.
	3	As soon as his car was stolen, Omar's dad reported it to the police – however, the car be found for several weeks.
	4	Mina was to get into the taxi when she realised someone had stolen her purse.
	5	We were really nervous until the police said they weren't to interview us about the accident.
	6	Alice was to studied law at university, but she decided to join the police service instead.
	7	At first, the suspect refused to admit doing anything wrong, but later he confess to the robbery.
	8	We didn't go to the airport until late afternoon because our flight leaving until the evening.
3		omplete the second sentence so that it has a similar eaning to the first sentence. Use the words in brackets.
	1	I meant to ask you about the shoplifters you saw in the supermarket, but I forgot. (was)
		I about the shoplifters you saw in the supermarket, but I forgot.
	2	The police arrived and stopped the robbers from breaking into the bank. (about)
		The police arrived when the robbers the bank.

5

	We We wi We wi My wi Kn Lc (w In Lc	e expected to arrest the suspect at 6.00 a.m., but we ere delayed due to heavy traffic. (have) e
		plete the dialogues with the future in the past and the s in brackets.
		Your mum just told me that you've got an interview at
		the university to study maths. I didn't even know you
	R	had applied. I'm sorry, I (tell) you, but then I
	D	decided to wait until I won a place.
2	Α	Is it true that your sister was a witness to a robbery at the museum?
	В	That's right. She said that she
		(forget) the thieves running away with the paintings under their arms.
3	Α	Why have you still got that book? I thought it was a
		leaving present for Senyo?
	В	(8.10) to 1111 of 110
4	Δ	day at work, but he didn't show up because he was ill. Where's Ethan? He's usually home by now.
7		He texted me to say he's still at the police station.
		The police (not / interview) him
		about the burglary he witnessed, but now they've
5	Α	decided they will. It's a shame you couldn't come to the party last
		Saturday.
	В	I know, but one of my cousins
		(leave town) the next day, and it was my last chance to see her.
6	Α	Why did you release the suspect?
		I (interview) him when I got a call
		to say that someone else had confessed to the crime.
		e three sentences that are true for you about
1		emething you promised to do for someone (e.g. a friend, our mum, a teacher), but didn't do.
2		event (e.g. a party, a trip) that had to be cancelled ecause of the weather.
2	-	mething important to you that you lost, but then
3		und later.
	_	

1 What can you remember about the article in the Student's Book?

- 1 Who was Stéphane Breitwieser?
- 2 Roughly how many works of art did he steal?
- 3 According to Breitwieser, why did he steal art?
- 4 What did his mother do after he was arrested?
- 2 These paintings have both been stolen from museums in the past. Try to guess the title and the artist of each painting. Then think about the questions.
 - 1 Why might someone steal a famous painting?
 - 2 What do you think happens to most artworks that are stolen?





3 • 8.06 Read the text quickly. Which paragraph ...

- 1 attempts to explain the actions of some art thieves? ____
- 2 describes the theft of some expensive paintings which have never been found? ____
- 3 talks about someone who bought a painting but did not know it had been stolen? ____
- 4 gives information about how stolen art is recovered? ____
- 5 explains what happened to the two paintings in Ex 2? ___

STRATEGY Scanning: distinguishing proper nouns

When reading an informative text, you may come across a lot of unfamiliar names of people and places. It helps your understanding if you can identify who or what these refer to.

4 Read the strategy above. In the text, find the names of ...

- 1 four paintings.
- 4 two art thieves.
- 2 seven artists.
- 5 an art dealer.
- 3 five museums.

because art_

6 an international event.

5 Read the text again and complete the sentences.

Т	Some of David van Auker's thought the painting
	he had displayed in his shop was
2	A(n) employee at the museum stole
	a famous painting in 1911.
3	Two different of a work by Edvard Munch were
	stolen in, ten years apart.
4	A huge cash was offered to find the
	Boston paintings, but they have not yet been recovered.
5	It isn't difficult to stolen artworks or
	them, which is why some criminals commit this type of theft.
6	Vieran Tomic, also called by police, said he stole

- 7 Only a small percentage of stolen art is _____ and where the rest of it is remains a _____.
- 6 Do you think eight years in prison is a long or a short time for committing a crime such as stealing famous paintings? Why?

STEALING BEAUTY: FAMOUS ART THEFTS

- A David Van Auker was an antique dealer from Silver City in the US. He used to help the families of people who had died to sell any furniture or art in their houses. In 2017, he bought a painting he thought was interesting and put it in his shop. He was going to sell it, but several customers told him they believed it was a valuable work of art. After some research, Van Auker realised the painting was William de Kooning's *Woman-Ochre*, which had been stolen from the University of Arizona Museum of Art 32 years earlier. It was now worth \$160 million. He returned it to the museum, but who stole it remains a mystery.
- B Many other valuable paintings have been stolen from museums. In 1911, an Italian called Vincenzo Perrugia, who used to work at the Louvre in Paris, committed perhaps the most famous art theft of the 20th century. He stole the *Mona Lisa* because he wanted to return it to Italy, the home of its creator, Leonardo da Vinci. *The Scream* by Norwegian painter Edvard Munch was stolen not once, but twice. In 1994, on the opening day of the Winter Olympics in Norway, it was taken from the National Museum in Oslo. And in 2004, a different version of the painting was stolen from another Oslo museum. Both versions would later be recovered.
- When thieves took thirteen paintings from the Gardner Museum in Boston, US. Together they were worth over \$500 million and included the most valuable painting ever stolen, Johannes Vermeer's *The Concert*. They are still missing, despite a \$5 million reward.
- Obviously, one reason is that they are worth millions of dollars. They are also easy to hide and transport. One thief, Vjeran Tomic, claimed he was inspired by a love of art. Known to French police as 'Spiderman,' he would climb the outside of buildings in Paris to commit burglaries, stealing paintings and jewellery from rich people's apartments. In May 2010, Tomic broke into the Musée d'Art Moderne and stole several paintings by artists such as Picasso, Matisse and Modigliani. He was later caught and sentenced to eight years in prison.
- Some countries have special police units to investigate art theft, but many do not. It is estimated that less than 10% of all stolen artworks have ever been recovered. The location of the others remains a mystery that may never be solved.

antique dealer (*n*) someone who buys and sells old furniture, paintings, jewellery, etc.

8.7 GLOBAL SKILLS

1	What can you remember about the leaflet in the Student's Book?
	Complete the phrases with the verbs below to make tips for how to
	communicate effectively.

be	get	give	keep	listen	respect	show	speak	use
1 _			carefull	У				
2			empath	ıy				
3			friendly	and pol	ite			
4			an oper	n mind				
5			non-ver	bal com	municatio	n 🗌		
6			others					
7			clearly					
8			feedbad	ck				
9			to the p	oint				

- 2 **3.07** Listen to someone giving a training course for customer service assistants. Tick (✓) the skills in Ex 1 that she mentions.
- 3 **3 8.07** Listen again. According to the speaker, ...
 - 1 how can you show a customer that you are willing to help them?
 - 2 what does it show if you make eye contact, nod and ask questions?
 - 3 what makes it easier to change your mind?
 - **4** why is it important to show empathy to customers?
 - 5 how will the other person know you are taking them seriously?
 - 6 what do customers NOT want you to do, and why?
- 4 Read the comments below and match them to one or more of the tips in Ex 1.

Workplace discussions

Log in Register



We asked four young people what they've learned about communication in the workplace. Here's what they said.

Some people seem to think a meeting is a chance to talk about anything they want, for a long time. Obviously, this is selfish and quite rude, because others may also have useful things to say. But also, the longer you talk, the less people listen to what you are saying. So if you want to get your message across, do it quickly and simply. Then be quiet and let someone else speak.

amelie902

When you are in a one-to-one meeting or a video meeting, look at the speaker, and nod to show you understand. People also appreciate it when you say 'I see' or 'That's interesting' – it shows you're paying attention. It's also good to ask questions – that helps you to check that you've understood correctly, but it also suggests you want to know more.

robjsmith

Where I work, we have to discuss some serious topics, which people often feel strongly about. I've learned that you should listen to everyone's point of view, because you won't always be right. If someone makes a good argument, then you need to be prepared to change your mind. It's also important to recognise that other people's opinions are as valuable as yours – even if you disagree with them.

CateB23

Think about the effect of what you say on other people. It's easy to upset someone by saying the wrong thing because you haven't tried to understand how they're feeling. Also, it's helpful to be told when you did something well. But it's also good to know if you didn't, so you can improve your performance – we learn by making mistakes!

thatnewguy404

5 Match the rules to the words below.

gossip mumble offend someone ramble whisper

FIVE THINGS	NOT
TO DO IN MEETINGS	

	O DO IN MEETINGS
1	talk continuously or too much
2	speak very quietly
3	talk about people's private lives
4	speak quietly and unclearly
5	make someone upset or annoyed

6 Two friends are discussing what they have learned about communication skills. Complete the dialogue with words and phrases from the previous exercises.

Α	OK, so first, it's important to 1 ,
	especially in meetings – don't whisper or
	2 Make sure people can hear you.
В	Right, and don't ³ , either –
	quickly and don't talk for too

- long. What else? A When you meet someone, 5_ polite - it's always good to smile and make eye contact.
- B Yes, in fact, 6_ is just as important as what you say. Like, nodding to show you understand.
- A Yeah, exactly. It shows you're 7_ and asking questions helps with that too.
- **B** But also, it's good to ⁸_____. Like saying 'well done' if a colleague does a good job.
- A And it's important to show that you ____ other people and their ideas, even if you don't agree. You should never be rude or you might 10_
- **B** OK, so think about people's reactions to what you say. Have some 11_ you need to try and understand how they feel.
- A You also need to keep a(n) 12 You know ... that you're ready to change your opinion if someone makes a good argument.
- B Yes, that's true.
- 7 You are applying for a part-time job as a shop assistant in a mobile phone shop. As part of the application process, you have been asked to write a summary of what you think the most important communication skills for the job are. Use the information in this lesson to write a short statement.

Unit 8

1 Look at the photo and answer the questions.

- 1 Who are the people and where are they?
- 2 What do you think is happening now?
- 3 What might have happened before the photo was taken?



8.08 Complete Parts 1 and 2 of the script with the words and phrases below. Then listen and check.

behind could be I can clearly see in the middle maybe it's on the left this photo shows

1	a street with several people in it
2	, I can see a teenage girl and a
policeman.	They're standing on the pavement and
there's a bic	ycle between them.
Contract to the second of the second	

The girl is wearing a jacket and a tie –

	a school unifo	rm. The
policeman i	s holding the bicycle wit	h one hand and
the girl is ta	lking to him. ⁴	of the
photo is a la	arge old building with a b	lack fence – it
5	a museum or	a public building.
Further dow	n the street, 6	
trees and it	looks like there are hous	es too.
7	the girl and th	e policeman, there
are two boy	s, or perhaps one of ther	m is a man, I'm not
sure. They're	e talking to each other. T	hey aren't looking
at the girl ar	nd the policeman Rehind	d them a van is

I suppose he's about to I think if I had to make a guess judging by the fact that looks like perhaps seem to be

driving out of the building onto the road.

The girl and the policeman 8_	
arguing. She 9	she is upset about
something. 10	she is holding
onto the seat of the bike, 11_	it's
probably her bike. 12	, I'd say the
policeman has stopped her fo	
crime. 13	it's because she was
riding on the pavement. Or m	aybe she didn't stop at a
red light. The policeman has	one hand on his radio –
14conta	ct the police station. It's
possible he thinks the girl has	s stolen the bike.

3 Put the phrases from Ex 2 into the correct column. Add one more phrase to each column.

Describing what you can see

Saying what you think is happening

PRONUNCIATION Stress for emphasis

When you speak and want to draw attention to certain words, you stress them. It means you pronounce them louder and longer than other words in a sentence.

- 4 PRONUNCIATION Read the Pronunciation box. Then say sentences 1-6 out loud. Underline the words you think should be stressed.
 - 1 They're standing on the pavement and there's a bicycle between them.
 - 2 The girl is wearing a jacket and a tie.
 - 3 They aren't looking at the girl and the policeman.
 - 4 I'd say the policeman has stopped her for committing a minor
 - 5 Or maybe she didn't stop at a red light.
 - 6 It's possible he thinks the girl has stolen the bike.
- 5 **8.09** Listen and check your answers to Ex 4. Listen again and repeat.

STRATEGY Making notes for a picture description task

When you're preparing to describe a picture, it helps to use a two-column table to make notes. In one column, write phrases to describe and make speculations about the scene. In the other column, note down a few useful words and phrases to talk about objects or people in the picture.

6 Read the strategy above. Choose one of the photos to describe. Use a table like the one below to make notes.

Phrases to describe the picture

Words to describe what's in the picture





- 7 Write your description. When you have finished, check that you have ...
 - used phrases to describe what you can see in the picture.
 - used phrases to say what you think is happening.

- 1 Do you know anyone who has been the victim of a crime? If so, how did they react? How do you think you would react if someone tried to rob you?
- 2 You are going to read an article about an unsuccessful robbery. Put the paragraph descriptions in the order you think they will appear.

The author describes what happened first. ___

The author says how the story finished and how they felt. _
The author describes what happened next and explains what they decided to do. ____

The author introduces the story and grabs the reader's attention. ____

3 Read the article quickly, ignoring the gaps. Do paragraphs A–D match the descriptions in Ex 2?



THE MOST RIDICULOUS BANK ROBBERY EVER!

Amelia Benson

A I

I work in a bank, so I think about it quite often. One morning last year, I was working in the bank when a young man came in. He was wearing a hoodie and carrying a rucksack. As he walked towards me, I smiled and asked, 'Good morning. Can I help you?'

Bʻ

He just pushed a note written on a piece of paper under the glass screen between us. 'Can I help you?' I repeated. He leaned towards me and whispered, 'Read the note.'

But the handwriting was so bad that I couldn't understand it. I looked back at the young man. 'Read it,' he insisted, more loudly.

'Your writing is terrible,' I replied. 'You'll have to tell me what it says.'

'Put the money in the bag!' he demanded.

0

Strangely, I wasn't frightened, but to gain some time, I explained, 'I can't do that unless you have an account with us. Also,' I continued, 'You haven't given me your bag.' He looked surprised. Then he tried to push his rucksack through the gap under the glass screen. Unfortunately, it wouldn't fit. I pulled it from my side, but it got stuck. The situation was so ridiculous that I started to laugh.

0

Then he grabbed his bag and ran out of the door. A few minutes later, the police arrived. I gave them the note. It had been written on the back of an envelope. On the other side were the robber's name and address! I was glad when they arrested him, but I felt a bit sorry for him too.

- **4** Match sentences A–E to gaps 1–4 in the article. There is one sentence you do not need.
 - A The robber looked at me in embarrassment.
 - **B** Quickly, I put the money into his rucksack.
 - **C** Have you ever wondered what you would do if someone tried to rob you?
 - **D** I realised this was a bank robbery!
 - E The young man didn't say anything.

STRATEGY Introducing quotations

When you want to include a direct quotation, you introduce it with a reporting verb followed by a comma. Then use single quote marks ('...') and add punctuation, for example: He added, 'Only until Friday. It must remain a secret!' To make your writing more interesting, use a variety of reporting verbs.

- **5** Read the strategy above. Find at least six examples of reporting verbs used in the article.
- 6 Complete the sentences with some of the reporting verbs from Ex 3. More than one answer may be possible.

1	The bank robber walked up to the counter and , 'Put all the money in this bag!'
2	When Tom, 'When will I receive my wages' his employer, 'When you've finished your work!'
3	The police arrested a suspect, who, 'I haven't broken the law!'
	My sister, 'I think I've lost my phone.' I didn't hear her, so she more loudly, 'I

- 7 You are going to write a similar article. Choose one of the topics below or use your own ideas.
 - My house was burgled while I was at home.
 - A famous artist gave me a painting and I lost it.
 - I committed a crime by accident!

think I've lost my phone!'

- **8** Plan your article. Make notes using the paragraph plan below. Use ideas in Ex 2 and think about ...
 - phrases you can use to grab the reader's attention.
 - reporting verbs you can use to make the article more interesting.

Paragraph plan

Paragraph A:		
Paragraph B:		
Paragraph C:		
Paragraph D:		

9 Write your article.

10 CHECK YOUR WORK Did you ...

- follow the paragraph plan?
- use phrases to grab the reader's attention?
- use a variety of reporting verbs and some direct quotations?

Grammar

- 1 Choose the correct alternative.
 - 1 Paul is a fantastic baker, and he will always bring / always brings cakes to work on Fridays.
 - 2 When they got married, my parents **would** / **used to** live in a flat above the family shop.
 - 3 I don't like sharing a workspace with Mona she is forever complaining / would forever complain that it's too hot, too cold or too noisy.
 - 4 Soroush's previous employer **would** / **will** never pay him extra wages if he worked late.
 - 5 Laura was a junior football champion until she was sixteen she **trained / used to train** for five years.
 - 6 The police **used to / will** normally interview a suspect when their lawyer is present.
 - 7 When my grandmother was young, women didn't **use** / **used** to stay in a job after they got married.
 - 8 Tim's boss is always asking / used to always ask him to make coffee, which isn't part of his job description.

2	Complete	the	sentences	with	one	word.
---	----------	-----	-----------	------	-----	-------

- 1 The police officers were ______ to arrest the suspect when he jumped off the bridge into the river.
- 2 I decided to stay home that evening because I was _____ up early for an appointment the next day.
- 3 When the police officer's phone started ringing, the suspect she was interviewing was _______ to confess.
- **4** At her interview, Sara didn't stand out against the other candidates no one imagined she ______ become the head of the company ten years later.
- 5 Jamal _____ going to mention money, but then his interviewer asked him how much he was hoping to earn.
- 6 Tom was to ______ attended an important appointment tomorrow with his new employer, but they cancelled it at the last minute.
- 7 We ______ going to hire you, but you got such a great reference from your previous employers that we changed our minds!

Vocabulary

3 Complete the sentences.

6 It isn't usual to be h____

can happen as companies often want to h_graduates from the best universities.

1	Make sure that your CV is u t t
	d – that way the company can see you have
	the necessary q
2	Thanks so much for writing me such a b
	r! I got the job, and the monthly s
	is considerably more than I used to be paid!
3	Before you complete an a form, you need to know exactly what the employer is looking for, so review the
	job d carefully.
4	When you write your CV, it's useful to include information about your hobbies, volunteering experience or travel –
	these can help you s o against
	other candidates, and increase your chances of getting an
	i
5	Could you tell me what the h is
	for this position? I'll need to receive a decent w

for your first job, but it

4	Complete the interview with a police officer with the
	words below. In each case, there is one word you do
	not need.

I burglars commit pickpockets

shoplifti	ng theft vandalism
Reporter	What sort of crimes do people typically 1 in your area?
Officer	Stealing is common. There are many different kinds of 2 For example, 3 – people taking things from shops and not paying. We always watch out for 4 too – there are some big houses in this area. 5 can be a problem – kids spraying graffiti on walls.
	confess criminals interview reports suspects witnesses
Officer	If someone ⁶ a serious crime, then we ⁷ an investigation. First, we talk to ⁸ to find out what they saw, then we make a list of ⁹ these are usually people that we already know are ¹⁰
Reporter	And what happens after you ¹¹ someone?
Officer	We'll take them to the police station and 12 them.

Cumulative review

- 5 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Use between two and five words including the word in **bold**.
 - After two hours of questions, the suspect admitted that he had stolen the bike. confess
 After two hours of questions, the suspect
 _____ stealing the bike.
 - 2 Mr Lin sometimes surprised candidates by asking random questions. would
 Mr Lin
 random questions in

Mr Lin _____ random questions in order to surprise candidates.

3 Witnesses would sometimes be interviewed in the street. **used**

The police sometimes _____ witnesses in the street.

4 My employer wasn't sure what my hourly rate was. **what**My employer asked me, '______ hourly
rate?'

REFLECT Think about the following questions.

- 1 Which lesson in this unit did you enjoy the most? Why?
- 2 Which of the grammar points did you find most difficult?
- 3 What three things will you do to improve your communication skills?
- **4** What did you find the easiest about writing an article? What did you find the most difficult?

Listening

EXAM STRATEGY

When you do a matching task, listen carefully to everything each speaker says. The information you need may be at the beginning, middle or end of what they say.

Which speaker says this?

- A I no longer worry about comparing myself to other people.
- **B** I'd probably regret doing the same as one of my family members.
- C There are some things about being an adult that I'm not looking forward to.
- **D** I think most things were better for me in the past.
- **E** I have a better relationship with certain members of my family than I used to.
- F My siblings and I are all about the same age.
- G I've learned a lot from someone much older than me.
- **H** I've managed to solve a relationship problem I'd had for several years.

Speaker 1	
-----------	--

Speaker 2 ___

Speaker 3_

Speaker 4 ___

Speaker 5 ___

Use of English

EXAM STRATEGY

The focus of the questions in multiple-choice cloze tasks may be on grammar or vocabulary. Before you answer each question, look at the rest of the sentence to see what the focus is.

3 Read the strategy above. Then look at the gaps in the exam task in Ex 4 and decide which of them test grammar, and which test vocabulary.

4 Read the text below and choose the correct answer, A, B, C or D, for each gap 1–10.

Tour guides wanted!



Do you have a good level of spoken and written English? Have you got a friendly personality and a good ¹____ of humour? Can you communicate clearly and enjoy ²___ time with other people? Are you an enthusiastic person who is interested in the history of your area?

If you can answer 'yes' to all these questions, then we 3 —love to hear from you! We are looking for young people to work 4 — tour guides during the summer months. Your job would be to take small 5 — of tourists around your town and tell them about its history. We will provide you with all the necessary training and equipment. No 6 — experience is necessary, but you must be prepared to work long hours in any weather! A minimum of five people and a maximum of ten will participate in each tour. We 7 — offer individual tours on specialist subjects.

If you are interested, please email us and tell us something about your background and experience and ⁸____ you want to work with us. We hold interviews throughout April, at which you will be expected to ⁹___ a short test in English. Working as a tour guide is a great way to improve your language skills and to meet interesting people from ¹⁰___ different countries. We can't wait to hear from you!

1	Α	feeling	В	kind	C	sense	D	idea
2	Α	taking	В	spending	C	making	D	wasting
3	Α	would	В	do	C	will	D	could
4	Α	for	В	at	C	as	D	like
5	Α	groups	В	tours	C	bands	D	excursions
6	Α	before	В	last	C	old	D	previous
7	Α	too	В	also	C	again	D	as well
8	Α	who	В	whose	C	why	D	which
9	Α	make	В	finish	C	end	D	complete
10	Α	many	В	more	C	most	D	much

Reading

EXAM STRATEGY

In a true or false task, remember that the statements are in the order of the text. This will help you to find the information you need to answer the questions.

5 Read the strategy above and then read the exam task in Ex 6. <u>Underline</u> the parts of the text that each statement relates to. One question has been done for you as an example. **6** Read the article about how we change with age. For each statement 1–8, write *T* (true) or *F* (false).

How age changes us

Is life better when we are younger or when we are older? The answer probably depends on which things in life matter most to you. While it's true that most people are usually physically fitter at a younger age, there is evidence that we may be more able mentally, and have more positive emotions, the older we get.

It used to be thought that our brains develop very fast when we are young, and that we have most brain power in our early twenties, before our mental abilities start to fail in middle age. However, scientists now believe that our brains may actually improve with age in some ways. Studies have shown that when given specific tasks, younger people often use only one side of the brain (the left side for logic or the right side for creativity). Older people, on the other hand, tend to use both sides together, and the result may be better decision-making.

Experiments by Swiss neuroscientist Lutz Jäncke suggest that when older people learn something new, for example, how to play a musical instrument, there is clear evidence of activity and development in the parts of the brain connected to hand movements, hearing and memory. Scientists have also shown that not all types of memory get worse with age. Procedural memory, which relates to how we do everyday things, tends to stay the same no matter how old we are. And semantic memory, which is connected to remembering ideas and general facts, seems to actually improve over time.

In his book *Old Masters and Young Geniuses*, David W Galenson uses examples of famous artists, writers and film directors to examine two types of artistic creativity. Some of them, such as Picasso and Orson Welles, were at their most inspired when they were young. However, the 'old masters' such as Michelangelo, Rembrandt and Hitchcock, improved with age as a result of a lifetime of experience and experiment. While we may not all become old masters, years of knowledge and experience (what we call 'wisdom') can have benefits for all of us. For example, it can make us better and faster at our jobs and help us to make decisions in new situations.

As for emotional improvements, we usually understand people and relationships better with age and are likely to choose to spend more time with those we care about. We are also more aware of how our decisions affect other people. Older people often pay more attention to the positive things in life and choose to focus less on the negative. Something that seems like a disaster when we are young may not seem so important in the bigger picture that old age lets us see.

- 1 The writer begins by suggesting that getting older may have benefits. T
- 2 Scientists now think that older brains are actually faster than young ones. ____
- 3 The writer says that young people find it difficult to use both sides of their brains at the same time. ____

- **4** Lutz Jäncke's research focused on people who had forgotten how to play an instrument. ____
- 5 There is evidence that different types of memory change in different ways as we get older. ____
- 6 In his book, David W Galenson refers to Picasso as a young genius. ____
- 7 The writer suggests that the older we are, the better we can deal with unexpected issues. ____
- 8 According to the writer, young people spend too much time worrying about relationships. ____

Speaking

EXAM STRATEGY

In a discussion task, you and your partner should talk equally about each of the points before trying to reach an agreement. Encourage your partner to speak by asking their opinion.

- **7** Read the strategy above. Then complete these questions appropriately. There are a number of possible answers.
 - 1 What do you _____ about this point?
 - 2 What's your _____ of this idea?
 - 3 Would you _____ or ____ with me about that?
 - 4 Shall we _____ this idea next?
- 8 Work in pairs. You are going to discuss which things from your school years will be most important to you as an adult. Talk to each other about why these things might be important to you in the future and decide which two would be the most useful.
 - · getting good exam grades
 - exploring effective ways to study
 - · making friends with other people
 - · learning how to use technology
 - understanding different cultures and values

Writing

EXAM STRATEGY

When you write a formal or semi-formal email or letter, make sure you use appropriate language and include appropriate formal / semi-formal phrases.

- **9** Read the strategy above and the exam task in Ex 10. Then rewrite the sentences in a more formal style.
 - 1 Hithere!
 - 2 I want to know more about the job.
 - 3 Do you need anything else from me?
 - 4 Hope to hear from you soon!
- 10 You have seen an online advert for a summer job helping young children to learn English. Write an email in which you ...
 - explain why you are interested in the job.
 - give the main reason why you think you would be good at the job.
 - give an example from your experience to support your application.
 - ask for more information about the job.

Transitive and intransitive verbs

- 1 Read the sentences. Decide which ending A or B is correct. Sometimes both answers are correct.
 - 1 Emily usually edits ...
 - A texts for our school magazines.
 - **B** for hours before she's happy with the final version of the text.
 - 2 Let's choose ...
 - A quickly or we'll have to stay here for the whole day.
 - **B** a location that not many people know of.
 - 3 It was raining ...
 - A heavily when filming the last scene.
 - B a shower when we were rehearsing our lines.

WORD SKILLS Transitive and intransitive verbs

All verbs can be divided into two groups: transitive and intransitive. When a verb is followed by an object (a noun or a pronoun), we call it 'transitive'. It means that the action of the verb is done or transferred to someone or something, for example *give flowers, buy food, check mail*, etc. Sentences with transitive verbs can be changed into passive (*flowers are given, food is bought, mail is checked*). Most verbs in English are transitive. There's also another group of verbs that don't need an object and can't be put into passive voice. These are intransitive verbs, for example *go, fall, sleep, shout*. Some verbs can be both transitive and intransitive, for example *eat*:

I ate a sandwich. (transitive) *It's time to eat.* (intransitive)

- **2 a** Read the information above. Decide if the verbs in the sentences below are transitive (*T*) or intransitive (*I*).
 - 1 I <u>laughed</u> so hard when I read that poem. ____
 - 2 How many times do you <u>rehearse</u> your lines before a performance? ____
 - 3 Our English teacher <u>wrote</u> the script for the end-of-year school play and it was really good. ____
 - 4 I agree that the last chapter isn't very clear. ____
 - 5 We drove for hours to get to the beach. ___
 - **6** It says here that Anna B. Sheppard <u>designed</u> costumes for *Spider-Man: Far From Home*. ____
 - 7 Dave <u>looked</u> everywhere and he still hasn't found his car keys.
 - 8 We <u>posted</u> a few pictures from our trip to Madrid on our blog. ____
- **b** Check your answers in Ex 2a by trying to put the <u>underlined</u> verbs in sentences 1–8 into passive. Write if a sentence can't be changed into passive.

1 _				
2 _				
3 _				
4 _				
5 _				
6 _				
7 _				
0				

- 3 Complete the sentences with 1–5 words to make sure the <u>underlined</u> verb is transitive.
 - 1 My little sister has always wanted to write
 - 2 It was late and Jessie was still studying

3	Don't move	It might fall.
_	DOTT CITTOVC	, it iiiigiit iatt.

- **4** Have you done _____?
- 5 Let's open ______.
- 6 Can you help ______

LEARNING STRATEGY Noticing verbs patterns

When you learn a new verb, it helps to check how it works in a sentence. Is it transitive or intransitive or can it be both? Is it followed by one object (play football) or by two objects (for example, give me flowers)? If it's followed by another verb, would it be a gerund (enjoy swimming) or an infinitive (want to swim)? What are some of its common collocations (play football, play a part, play music, play a game, etc.)?

4 Read the strategy. Complete the table. Use a dictionary if you need to.

Verb	Transitive / intransitive / both	Followed by -ing / to + infinitive	Common collocations
do	both	-	homework, exercises
make	1	-	3
go	4	-	5 6
hate	7	8	
give	9	-	10
take	12	-	13

5 a Choose three verbs below. Write sentences with them in your vocabulary notebooks and make notes like the ones in Ex 4.

break catch come cross direct edit follow keep offer promise

b Add two more verbs that you've recently learned to your list in Ex 5a. Complete the information about each verb like in Ex 4.

Adjectives, nouns and verbs with dependent prepositions

- 1 Choose the correct alternative.
 - 1 My parents are always <u>proud</u> with / of me.
 - 2 I'm responsible of / for ironing my own clothes.
 - 3 I have to focus on / to the exams and study more.
 - 4 His decision had a big impact for / on my life.
 - 5 He's interested in / with modern art.

WORD SKILLS Adjectives, nouns and verbs with dependent prepositions

A lot of English adjectives, nouns and verbs are followed by prepositions. Sometimes one word can be followed by different prepositions. These prepositions sometimes have the same meaning and can be used interchangeably, for example amazed at and amazed by. However, sometimes different prepositions are used for different contexts, for example I'm angry with Tom. I'm angry about Tom's decision. It's important to learn the words together with the prepositions they go with.

2 Read the information above. Match the adjectives with dependent prepositions to their definitions and example sentences.

angry about angry with good at good for

good to	guilty about	guilty of	
ahle to	do something w	المر	

- 1 able to do something well _ taking photos of Ella is quite __ landscapes.
- 2 willing to help; showing kindness to other people _____ his young brother. He always helps him.
- 3 having strong feelings about something that you dislike very much
 - _____ the fact that the government does nothing to stop greenhouse gas emissions.
- 4 having done something illegal
 - How can you prove that he's __ stealing all this money?
- 5 having a useful or helpful effect on somebody / something
 - __ tourists to bring a map in case their phone doesn't work.
- 6 feeling annoyed with someone
 - I don't know why James is so _____ me. I haven't done anything wrong.
- 7 feeling ashamed because you have done something that you know is wrong
 - I feel _____ forgetting to call Amira back.

3 Complete the sentences with the prepositions below.

about by of (×2) on (×2) with

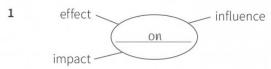
- 1 Maryam is obsessed _____ __ photography. She takes hundreds of photos each week.
- 2 The park was surrounded _____ a tall wall.
- 3 They're fond ______ hiking and bike riding.

- 4 Sadly, I can't rely _____ my brother Sam when I need his help.
- 5 I'm worried that people will be jealous _____ my
- 6 I'm feeling a bit embarrassed _____ this whole
- 7 My sister has never been keen _____ science fiction books.

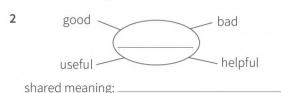
LEARNING STRATEGY Identifying patterns in meaning

Learn adjectives, nouns and verbs together with the prepositions and their contexts, for example angry with someone but angry about something. It helps to make a list of different parts of speech followed by the same preposition because these words may have similar meanings or are used in a similar context. For example, of is often used with adjectives describing fear, such as afraid of, frightened of or scared of.

4 Read the strategy. Then complete the diagram with the prepositions and the meanings which the words share.



shared meaning: to have an effect or influence



convinced certain shared meaning:

bored. annoyed fed up -- unhappy disappointed -

shared meaning: _

nervous. anxious shared meaning: ___

flight \ journey - tour travel shared meaning: _

5 In your vocabulary notebook, make a diagram with at least two words that share the meaning of the same preposition. Use the dictionary if you need to.

Analysing differences between similar words

Complete the s	entences with the w	ords below.	between similar words				
hurt painful			To make sure you use words with similar meanings correctly				
throat.	t talk much today. Sh	e has auckily no one was badly	you have to analyse the factors which contribute to the subtle differences in their meaning: • meaning and usage, for example the word <i>trip</i> refers to a				
	 en the most		 short journey for pleasure or a particular purpose collocations – what other words often go with it? For example, go on / take a trip connotations – What feelings and ideas are associated w 				
journey trav	vel tripto Collife	ord Lake in Cornwall	the word? For example, a boat trip or a day trip suggest it's a short journey.				
5 I'd like to hav 6 She was a bit	ve a job which would , especially to Asia t tired after a six-hou Words with similar	involve a lot of and North America. r train	 3 a Read the strategy. Choose the correct words to complete the definitions and information about the usage 1 come across / encounter (v) to meet somebody, or discover or experience something, especially somebody 				
There are some we meaning, howeve them. For exampl similar meanings. other hand, is a popeople. Ancient de	vords in English which er there are some sma le, the words <i>old, elde</i>	seem to have the same Il differences between rly and ancient have ral word. Elderly, on the use to talk about old ditions belonging to a	 something new, unusual or unexpected Usage: rather formal, mostly in written English discover / come across (v) to meet or find somebody / something by chance Usage: rather informal discover / meet (v) to find somebody / something that was hidden or that you did not expect to find 				
		t the words below and lictionary if you need to.	 Complete the sentences using the words from Ex 3a. A collection of 16th century paintings have been in the old theatre in our town. 				
	ve recover treat		2 The report presents what difficulties the research team during their trip to Antarctica.				
	would you use to say s is healthy again? B improved	that someone who has	3 You won't believe it but I my old diary when I was cleaning my desk. my				
2 Which word i that someon	is the most general a	nd can be used to say ng better but also that,	4 Look at the words below and add one or two words which have a similar meaning. What is the difference in meaning? Usage? Collocation? Connotation? Use a dictionary.				
A recover 3 Which word i medical help	is used to say that so	C treat meone is getting	coast, seaside coast is the land next to or near to the sea or ocean; along the coast, on the south / east coast of England				
A cure	B treat study train	C recover	seaside is an area that is by the sea, especially one where people go for a day or a holiday; at the seaside, a trip to the seaside				
4 Which word of time before a	describes how you stan exam?	cudy facts one more	2 gorgeous,				
5 Which word i	B learn is used to talk about ect by reading, going B train		3 harm,				
	se verbs is used whe	C study n we talk about	4 author,				
	B learn	C study					
			5 Choose two sets of words with similar meanings and explain the differences between them in your vocabulary notebook.				

LEARNING STRATEGY Analysing differences

challenging difficult hard strong

stream river waterfall

The meaning of particles in phrasal verbs

L	a	Complete the sentences with the same word.
	1	Over the last ten years, Bako built a large collection of comic books.
	2	I was brought by my grandparents because my parents were at work most of the time.
	3	You look sad! What can I do to cheer you?
	4	My little brother keeps saying that he wants to travel to the moon when he grows
		Match the definitions A−D to the sentences. Tick (✓) the

A teach a child how to behave ____

_	_ teach a child now to behave _
В	make someone happier

	1							
.	become	greater	ori	arger	ın	numi	per	
	Decomine	B. carce.	0	60.			J C	

develop into an adult ____

WORD SKILLS Particles in phrasal verbs

Phrasal verbs consist of verbs (for example *break*) and particles (for example *down*). Together they form a new meaning which is different from the meaning of its parts, for example *break down* means to 'stop working'. Sometimes, particles share patterns of meaning and the same particle added to different verbs changes the meaning in a similar way. For example, the particle *down* can mean 'to finish, stop or complete'. Apart from *break down* we notice the same pattern of meaning in *close down* or *burn down*.

The same particle can have several different meanings, for example 'down' can also mean 'move down' as in *sit down* or *fall down*. It can also mean 'become smaller in number or size' as in *turn down the music* or *slow down*.

2 Read the information above and the different meanings of the particle *out*. Match the phrasal verbs in bold from the sentences to the correct pattern of their meaning (A–C).

	out,,,,,,	
В	out which means 'move outside or do something outside' –,,	

c out which means 'not include' – ______,

A out which means 'finish or complete' - check

- 1 We had to **check out** from the hotel before 8 a.m. to catch the morning train to Bristol.
- **2 Keep out** of the kitchen because Syed is cooking. He doesn't like it when someone gets in his way!
- 3 Can you take out the rubbish, please?
- **4** Lily used to work as a babysitter and all the parents were pleased with her because she **carried out** her duties really well.
- 5 We usually **go out** every Friday evening. Last weekend we went to a concert and next week we're planning to see a film in the cinema.
- 6 Sami often eats out because he doesn't like cooking.
- 7 I'm so glad things have finally worked out!
- 8 I can't make a cake because we've run out of eggs.
- 9 You have to come to Peyton's party! You don't want to miss out on all that fun.
- 10 I don't know how to sort out my problems.

LEARNING STRATEGY Identifying the meaning of particles

It helps to keep a record of the phrasal verbs you've learned. It's a good idea to divide them according to the particle they are followed by. Once this is done, you can try to categorise the groups of phrasal verbs by the meaning of these particles. It's usually quite general and although there's a clear link between them, you'll sometimes have to use your imagination to visualise it.

- **3** Read the strategy and the sentences below. Then add the phrasal verbs in **bold** to the mind maps.
 - 1 I was talking to Kayla on the phone but she suddenly hung up. ____
 - 2 I like to I get up early because then I have time to do yoga.
 - 3 It's not easy to **give up** these unhealthy snacks but I know I should do it.
 - 4 My little brother never **picks up** his toys from the floor.
 - 5 Who **showed up** at Mike's party?
 - 6 Santi promised he would visit me right after school but he never **turned up**.
 - 7 Miriam was sitting on the sofa but she **stood up** as soon as she heard a doorbell.
 - 8 We've **used up** all the eggs to make a cake so there aren't any left in the fridge, sorry!



4 Look at the list of phrasal verbs with the particle *back* below. Decide what patterns of meaning they have. In your vocabulary notebook, divide them into categories using a table like the one below or a mind map like in Ex 3.

call back come back go back look back pay back put something back send back take back think back

Pattern of meaning	Examples of phrasal verbs
refer to events in the past	look back

Prefixes

- 1 a Choose the correct prefixes in sentences 1–3.
 - 1 These potatoes are too hard. I can't eat them. I think they are **over / under**cooked.
 - 2 New Zealand produces and then ex / imports milk and cheese to China, Australia, the USA and to many other countries.
 - **3** After Monica fell out with her brother, she started crying and immediately **dis** / **re**appeared to her room.
 - **b** Complete the table with the missing prefixes in Ex 1a.

Meaning	Prefix
too much	_
again	_
below, not enough	
out of	_
not, the opposite of	_
in, into	_

WORD SKILLS Prefixes

Prefixes are groups of letters which are added to the beginning of the word and change its meaning. Being familiar with different prefixes makes it easier to understand new words. For example, it's possible to guess the meaning of the word misunderstand ('understand in a wrong way') when we know that the prefix mis- means 'wrongly'.

2 a Read the information above. Complete the sentences with the prefixes below.

f	anti- co- de- ex- extra- ore- inter- non- over-
1	We go to a(n)national school. There are students from all over the world but mostly from India, Japan and Korea.
2	Is it true that one pilot can't operate a plane during a commercial flight? I've heard that there must always be a(n)pilot.
3	Have you checked the weathercast for tomorrow? I wonder if it's going to rain again.
4	Don't go to that shop. All their products arepriced. I don't understand why people pay so much for things which they can get cheaper in other places.
5	The view from these cliffs is trulyordinary. I've never seen anything so beautiful!
6	Nate doesn't read many novels. He prefersfiction.
7	forestation causes problems with water which may lead to droughts or floods.
8	We have just installed a(n)virus software on our computer to protect it from hackers.

b Complete the table below with the prefixes and examples in Ex 2a.

Prefix	Meaning	Example
anti-	opposed to; against	anti-virus
	the opposite of, removing	deforestation
	not	
	together with	
	too much	
	before	
	very, more than usual	
	between; from one to another	
	previous, former	

LEARNING STRATEGY Spelling of the prefixes

When we add a prefix to a word, we keep all the letters in the base word and in the prefix. This may lead to situations when some letters will have to double, for example, *mis-+ spell* makes *misspell*. Most prefixes added to the base word will create one word. However, some prefixes such as *co-, ex-* and sometimes *anti-* are often used with hyphens, for example *ex-president* or *co-pilot*. There are no definite rules whether the prefix will require the use of a hyphen so if you're not sure, it's best to check it in a dictionary.

3 Read the strategy and the definitions 1–10. Write the words using the prefixes below.

	CO-	dis-	ex-	im-	ir-	mis-	non-	over-	re-	un-
1	top	olay ag	gain a	video	or m	iusic re	cording			
2	to h	nave a	differ	ent op	oinio	n to soi	meone	else –		
3					n an	imal in	a cruel,	unkind	or un	fair
	wa	y –								
4	not	neces	ssary							
5	ар	reviou	s bos	s –						
6	sor	nethin	ig tha	t isn't	perfe	ect				
7	(of a person) not being responsible –									
8	ар	erson	that s	omeb	ody	works	with – _			
								or sensi	ble wa	ау-
0	sor	nethin	g tha	t cont	ains	no fat -				
-:	مام	+ 1000		a+b a r	0425	م مامم	£	with n	. ofi.	_

4 Find at least two other examples of words with prefixes. Use a dictionary if you need to. Write them in your vocabulary notebook.

-	anti-	CO-	dis-	ех-	im-	mis-	over-	re

gets.

9 I wonder how much money the _____

Idioms

- **1 a** Match the phrases to meanings A–D. Don't worry if you are not sure if your answers are correct.
 - 1 cut corners ____
 - 2 let the cat out of the bag ___
 - 3 be a piece of cake ___
 - 4 wash your hands of something ____
 - A to refuse to be responsible for or involved with somebody / something
 - B to be very easy to do
 - C to tell a secret carelessly or by mistake
 - **D** to do something in the easiest, cheapest or quickest way, often by ignoring rules or leaving something out
 - **b** Match the definitions A–D in Ex 1a to the idioms in **bold** below. Did you guess the definitions correctly in Ex 1a?
 - 1 I've washed my hands of that project. I don't want to be part of it. ____
 - 2 I'm sorry but I **let the cat out of the bag** and now Greta knows we're preparing a surprise party for her. ____
 - 3 Some companies want to save money and **cut corners** on the safety of their employees. ____
 - 4 I didn't have any problems setting up a bank account. It was a piece of cake. ____

WORD SKILLS Idioms

Idioms are groups of words whose meaning is different from the meanings of the individual words, for example *once in a blue moon* means 'rarely' whereas a piece of cake means 'something easy'. They're often used in informal situations. It's difficult to guess the meaning of idioms without a context, so when you see an unusual combination of words, it's good to check it in the dictionary.

2 Read the information above. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words below.

(chance	clue	cut	dream	hand	luck	make	ring
	a helpir	ng		o unders and	studied	with n	ne for ho	urs.
2				hy he had I d a				
3		to this		ong stor hbourhoo				
4	I don't l condition				how to	turn or	the air	
5	the		S	cial medi She travel enough	s a lot, e	eats ou	t in nice	
6	The swe	_	ot fro	m my gra	ndma re	eally		_
7	You thin	k the t	eache !	er will give	e us no h	nomew	ork?! Fa	t
8				_but this car with p				

LEARNING STRATEGY Making the best of incidental and deliberate learning

Deliberate vocabulary learning can involve studying a list of words and learning their translations, definitions and pronunciation. Incidental vocabulary learning happens when you remember new words by accident, for example when you see the word in a book you read or hear it in a song. Studying lists of words is helpful but it's also important to keep your eyes open, perhaps you'll hear a new phrase or idiom on TV or in a magazine. Try to guess its meaning from the context, ask yourself questions about how or when it's used, or check it in a dictionary.

3 a Read the strategy and the social media post below. Look at idioms 1–3 in the text and answer the corresponding questions 1–3.

	ñ	Q	Φ	\square
	midnight of wanted to maths hom next morning days wrong so was the	oil and write my get a good gra- nework so I ² hit ng I got up so I	vessay until of the control of the c	ound 2 a.m.! The ned out I got the owing day and st straw was a
1	Do you think ' What did Ed d midnight oil'?			s a good thing? ourning the
2	What could Ec			er words could
3	Was it a good have happene			at other things
	Match the idio	oms 1–3 in Ex	3a with the	correct
В	for you to acco	eries of bad ev ept a situatior	ents that ma	akes it impossible
Lo	to go to bed _ ook at the idior ean. Which clu	ns in bold bel		nat you think they aning?
1	*	Q	Δ.	\square
	@Alex If	inally bought a	new laptop!!!	My previous one

stopped working when I accidentally dropped it. I was so upset with myself, but Mum told me not to **cry over spilled milk!** It was slow and old anyway. Unfortunately, it **cost an arm and a leg** so my parents had to help me pay for it.

1 cry over spilled milk -

2 cost and arm and a leg - _

Clue: _

Clue: _

7 HOW TO LEARN VOCABULARY

Words in context

Λ	101	ras in context
L		Match the <u>underlined</u> verbs in sentences 1–6 to their eanings A–C.
		•
	2	Katie <u>won a place</u> at the university The president's recent plans haven't <u>won</u> the support of
	3	many people Who <u>won</u> the Civil War in the USA?
	4	Miles <u>won</u> £50 in a lottery
	5	It isn't easy to win Omar's respect
	6	Our team won the last two matches.
	Α	to be the most successful in a competition, race, battle
	Ь	election, etc.
	_	
	С	to achieve or get something that you want, especially by
		your own efforts
V	VO	RD SKILLS Words in context
	of very known the me and	w words are often taught in lexical sets. These are groups words which are linked to the same topic, for example ucation. Lexical sets can consist of words which belong different parts of speech. Some of these words may have y similar meanings or they might include words that you ow already but with a different meaning, for example you y know sit (on a chair, at your desk, etc.) but when learning lexical set for education you can find out that sit an exam ans take an exam. It's important to learn words in context it check what meaning of a word appears in the text or itences you study.
	ar	Read the information above. Read the sentences below and tick () the ones which are true for you. When I learn new words I prefer when they belong to one
		lexical set.
	2	I often have problems finding differences in the meaning of similar words.
	3	The best way for me to learn words from a lexical set is to translate them into my own language.
	4	I usually check not only the meaning of the word but also how it's used in sentences.
	5	I often mix up words or phrases in one lexical set because they are very similar to me.
	6	It's difficult for me to remember words which have different meanings. I usually remember only the most
		basic one or the one I learned first.
2		ead the sentences A−C and tick (✔) the ones which use e word in bold in the same meaning.
		The bank charges a 1006 interest rate on my loss
		The bank charges a 10% interest rate on my loan.
	В	My phone is almost dead. I need to charge it.
	С	Some online shops don't charge you for delivery if you spend more than £50.
	2	
		A lot of people like to arrange books by the colour of
	Н	their covers instead of by alphabetical order.
	P	
	D	Can you call the estate agent to arrange a viewing of the

3	
Α	Martin is not my cousin! We're not related at all.
В	Mrs Hughes is our neighbour but she's also related to my mum. Her mum was my grandma's aunt. \square
С	My second question is related to what we were talking about earlier.
4	
Α	This camera was quite expensive so I'm treating it with care.
В	These pills can be used to treat different infections.
С	Our coach doesn't treat all players in the same way. I don't like it.
5	
Α	The book that I'm reading is set in England in the 16th century.
В	I'm late because I forgot to set the alarm clock.
С	The air conditioning works well only when it's \textbf{set} on very low temperatures. $\hfill \Box$

LEARNING STRATEGY Personalising lexical sets

The higher your level of English is, the more challenging it may be to learn lexical sets. The differences in meaning can be very small and it's very easy to confuse such words. To avoid these problems, try to learn the words in context, for example use the new words to create a short story or to make sentences which describe your experiences or refer to people you know.

3 Read the strategy and look at the lexical set for *education*. Divide the words into groups of three. Add one more word to each group. Then, write some short stories in your vocabulary notebook using the words you have chosen. Use a dictionary if you need it.

academic attend concentrate campus coursework curriculum determined drop out graduate hand in progress term

Example:

set: graduate, campus, determined extra word: **degree**

My sister Jules has always been very determined and hard-working. When she was 8 years old, she told everyone she would graduate from Harvard. We all laughed at it then but guess what, she has just called to say she's arrived at Boston safely and is heading for the campus. She's about to begin her studies at Harvard! She hopes to do a degree in engineering.

flat we've seen the ad of?

C Jason arranged to meet with his friend on Tuesday.

Collocations

- 1 Complete the underlined phrases with the same word. How would you translate those phrases into your language? Do you translate the missing word in the same way in each phrase?
 - 1 The phone I bought last week isn't working so I decided to ______ a complaint.
 - 2 I often go shopping for clothes but I never _a purchase without discussing my choice with my friend first.
 - 3 Your qualifications definitely _ a difference when applying for a job.
 - 4 It's easy to ______ friends when you're sociable.

WORD SKILLS Collocations

When two or more words often go together we call them a collocation. We would rather say:

take orders not get orders commit a crime not pick a crime review the job description not inspect the job description *heavy rain* not strong rain

Collocations can be made up of different parts of speech, for example:

verb + noun - report a crime (not tell a crime) adjective + noun - academic year (not educational year) verb + adverb - terribly sorry (not horribly sorry) adverb + adjective - pleasantly surprised (not cheerfully surprised)

- 2 Read the information above. Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.
 - 1 Who's going to take / play the part of Hamlet in the new TV show?
 - 2 | strongly / firmly recommend that you get references from your former employer.
 - 3 Children have to learn to get / take turns while playing games.
 - 4 This study is trying to explain why people make / commit crimes.
 - 5 You have to hang / stay positive.
 - 6 If you want to keep in shape / fitness, you should go to the gym regularly.
 - 7 I'm afraid I blew / threw my chances of getting onto the team. I didn't score a single goal.
 - 8 I like people who try to **stretch** / **develop** their skills in their free time, for example by taking part in different classes or lectures.
 - 9 It's been a long week and I need to rest. I'm cold / dead tired.
 - 10 Minnie isn't feeling well and she has a large / high temperature.

LEARNING STRATEGY Verifying collocations

If you need to use a collocation don't rely on translating it word by word from your native language. Collocations in different languages are often made up from different words.

It's always a good idea to learn collocations, not just single words. However, if you want to use a collocation and you're not sure if it's correct, you can:

- use a collocations dictionary if you have one.
- check an English–English dictionary and look for example sentences. There, usually in **bold**, you can find some of the most popular and the strongest collocations, for example:

goal noun

BrE/goʊl/◄); NAmE/goʊl/◄)

something that you hope to achieve

- → SYNONYM AIM
- · to work towards a goal
- · to achieve/attain a goal
- · You need to **set yourself** some long-term **goals**.
- Our **ultimate goal** must be the preservation of the environment.
- · Their goal was to eradicate malaria.
- use a web search. Put your idea for a collocation in speech marks ("...") and see how many hits it has. Even if it's popular, check if these websites can be trusted (for example these are magazines or reliable articles, not posts on forums).
- 3 Read the strategy. Look at the definitions and possible collocations. Use a search engine to check which one is more popular. Remember to use "speech marks". Write the number of results you get next to each collocation. Then, tick () the correct collocation.
 - 1 to see something / somebody for a moment
 - A catch the sight of _____ results
 - **B** throw the sight of _____ results
 - 2 to go to see a person
 - A pass a visit _____ results
 - B pay a visit _____ results
 - 3 a mistake that happens without meaning to cause harm
 - A true mistake _____ results
 - B honest mistake _____ results
- 4 Read the definitions and complete the collocations below.
 - 1 fully awake w___ _____ awake
 - 2 to listen carefully p_____ attention

a qualification

- 3 provide enough money for something c____
- 4 do something even though you know that something bad could happen as a result – t_____ a risk
- 5 traffic that is worse than usual h_

5 What's happening in the picture? What will the girl do next? Write sentences in your notebook using collocations. You can use the ideas for collocations below.

S	her own busines
g	work experience
d	out of college
d	a degree



Film-making and The written word

1	Pl	RACTISE Choose the correct answer: A, B or C.	
	1	Some directors prefer actors not to their lines before they start filming.	
		A play B rehearse C script	
	2	Did you know that films like Black Panther, Ant Man and	
		the Wasp and some parts of The Avengers were made not	
		in Hollywood but in a in Atlanta?	
		A film studio B line C plot	
	3	The first Beauty and the Beast film was made in 1991 and	
		animated, but in 2017 Walt Disney Pictures produced it	
		again, this time as	
		A a live-action film B special effects C a script	
	4	I remember that during my first school play I was so	
		nervous that I forgot to say half of my	
		A parts B plot C lines	
	5	The TV show <i>Money Heist</i> is in Madrid.	
		A directed B set C rehearsed	
	6	Ben Affleck and Matt Damon not only played in the film <i>Good Will Hunting</i> but they also wrote the	
		A script B lines C locations	
2	Co	implete the sentences with the correct form of the words	
577		low.	
	(hapter editor horror poetry post publisher	
	1	It's the scariest I've ever read. When I	
		finished it, I couldn't fall asleep at night because I was	
		sure the story was real!	
2 Ashu talked to several, but nobody was			
	_	interested in printing her book.	
	3	Jill doesn't enjoy novels, but she often reads	
	4	You should really read this book! The first	
	_	is a bit confusing but later it all becomes clear.	
	5	My cousin Martin and his wife Ally both work in a local newspaper. They are so their job is to	
		correct the articles before they're printed.	
	6	In English class, we had to write a poem and then	
		it on our school website.	
3	W	ite the missing letters to complete the sentences.	
	1	There's always a bit of magic in f	
		t, for example a frog turns into a prince.	
	2	What I really like about reading m	
		nis that as the plot develops I can	
		try to guess who is responsible for the crime that was	
	_	described in the first chapter.	
	3	Tessa began her writing career by writing s	
		s She said they were easier to plan because they had fewer characters and a simpler	
		plot than novels.	
	4	If you're looking for a book about volcanoes, go to the	
	7	nfsection which is on the	
		left next to the magazines.	
	5	Have you noticed that in most s	
		fnovels machines think and	
		behave like humans?	

- 4 EXTEND Choose the correct alternative.
 - 1 I feel this film is going to be a huge **quotation** / **blockbuster**.
 - 2 Kaheem wanted to be a journalist but ended up as a villain / screenwriter writing mostly TV shows.
 - 3 'To be or not to be' is the most famous **quotation** / **adaptation** from Shakespeare's *Hamlet*.
 - 4 This is such a great event! You have to come with me. We'll be able to meet all the members of the **blockbuster / cast** of our favourite TV show.
 - 5 Maggie has always dreamed of preparing a TV show **adaptation** / **genre** of her favourite Jane Austen novel.
 - **6** We had our last **cast** / **rehearsal** of *Peter Pan* before tomorrow's performance.
 - 7 Which **genres** / **screenwriters** of books would you recommend to someone who doesn't like reading that much.
 - 8 At the end of the story, it turns out that the **rehearsal** / **villain** wasn't such a bad person after all.
- **5** Complete the dialogue with the correct form of the words below. There are two words you do not need.

adaptation blockbuster cast genre

quo	tation	rehearsal	screenwriter	villain
Elle	Great r		nglish teacher po for the play we'	osted the re going to perform
		haracters! I	I'm going to play just hope I'm no ain. I hate playin	ot going to be the
Jake	Congra	atulations! V	Vhat's the title o	f the play?
	of a short story written by an Australian blogger. It's something about what the world might look li in 100 years. There was even a film based on this play which turned out to be a huge 4 Everyone was talking about it.		ralian blogger. Id might look like based on this	
Jake	Sound 5		science fiction i nen are you star	
Elle	We're i	meeting on f	Friday, and Mr H	ume promised to

6 Do a survey to find out what genres of films and books your friends and family like. Ask them to tell you what film they have recently enjoyed and why. Write a short report and prepare to give a presentation to the class.

give us the script so we can start learning our lines.

Name	Favourite genre of books and films	A title of the movie they've recently enjoyed	Reasons why they liked it

Landscapes and The environment

_	
P	RACTISE Complete the sentences with the words below.
	preathtaking views cave coast peaceful lake seaside surrounded by the edge of the cliff valley
1	They spend every summer at the Sun and salty water are what they like the most.
2	If you stand near, you can take a better picture of the ocean.
3	It's such a beautiful place! The river runs through the and there are mountains on both
Л	of its sides. Milla has a picture of a as the
7	wallpaper on her laptop. The water isn't moving so it looks so quiet and relaxing!
5	The city of Innsbruck in Austria is mountains. It's a great place to go if you want to go skiing
6	If you get to the top of this hill, you'll be able to enjoy the most of this whole area.
7	I remember that the we were exploring was really cold and dark. There were lots of bats too!
8	We were driving along the for hours. The views of the ocean were spectacular.
_	and the second of the description of the bloom of the blo

2 Correct the <u>underlined</u> words in the sentences with the words below. Two sentences are correct and you don't need to change them.

climate change deforestation environmental harm natural resources recycling waste renewable energy solar panels sustainable

- 1 This campaign is aimed at showing people how cars pollute the atmosphere every day.
- 2 A lot of houses in this area have <u>natural resources</u> on their roofs. I guess it's because when you have such hot sunny weather, it's the perfect way to produce your own energy.
- **3** Temperatures and the amount of rain have changed over the last hundred years so much that more and more people worry about <u>deforestation</u>.
- **4** Gas and coal aren't <u>solar panel</u> sources, but wind or water are.
- 5 If they want to be called <u>environmental</u> farmers, they should grow food in a way that protects natural resources for future generations.
- 6 I think water, forests and soil are the most important <u>climate change.</u> We wouldn't be able to live without them!
- 7 Renewable energy is the act of cutting down trees.
- 8 Every now and then I read about products that <u>harm</u> our environment. Plastic straws, cleaning supplies or regular tea bags this list is huge!
- **9** This article discusses why tourism has such a negative <u>sustainable</u> impact.

3 Complete the leaflet with the underlined words in Ex 2.

		e you worried about floods, droughts and her problems caused by 1?
		Here are a few tips on 2living. Drive less! When you ride a bike or use public transport, you don't 3 Clean air is so important for all of us. Turn off the lights when you leave the room. You might also consider using 4 at your home. One of the most common solutions is to install 5 and rely on sunlight. Join a local 6 group that wants to help the planet. Show others how to recycle waste or protect 7 such as water or forests. Buy recycled products and use less paper to stop 8 You might even plant a tree!
4		CTEND Choose the correct answer: A, B or C.
	fo a s lts sto a l hill 4 or 1 2 3 4	st weekend we took 1 to Vancouver Island. It's famous or gorgeous scenery, wild beaches and wildlife. There's also opectacular 2 which stretches along the whole island. This highest point, 2198 m, is the Golden Hinde. On Friday, we opped at Botanical Beach, a nature 3 where you can see of of unique sea plants and animals. The next day we went king. I really hoped we'd see a Vancouver Island marmot, but we weren't that lucky. On Sunday, we had a picnic the 5 and swam in the ocean. It was perfect! A a shore B an excursion C a landfill A mountain range B nature reserve C coast A excursion B reserve C generate A an endangered B an excursion C a shore Species
_		A generate B shore C landfill
5	le ¹ 2 3 4 5	It's my dream to visit a n r in Kenya where animals live freely in the grasslands. Our boat was about 500 metres from the s when we heard the thunder. This is an old l It was closed a few years ago when they run out of space for more rubbish. Plants need c d to make food. All these wind turbines g enough electricity for the whole town. The Andes, with the length of 7,000 km, are the longest continental m r in the world.
6		a short project about a place of natural beauty which is risk because of climate change.

Find out and describe ...

- what place it is and where it is.
- what makes this place special.
- what environmental dangers this place has to face.
- how people can save and protect this place.

Illnesses and injuries and Getting better

- **1 PRACTISE** Complete the sentences with the missing words. The first letters are already given.
 - 1 You have to be more careful with the knife next time. Luckily, this c____ isn't very deep.
 - 2 I got a minor b on my hand. I was ironing my shirt in hurry and I accidently touched the hot iron.

 - **4** Every time we go camping, I come back with lots of m_____ b___ ____ I use different sprays but nothing seems to help.
 - 5 A lot of people die from h______ because they don't look after themselves. They eat unhealthily, don't control their weight and smoke.
 - 6 Will doesn't exercise at all, so whenever he goes up the stairs to our office, he g______ o___ of b_____ of
 - 7 If you have a sore throat, a fever and feel really tired, it might be a sign that you have t____ f____.
- 2 Choose the correct answer: A, B or C.



This website promotes a variety of natural 1...... There's a list of diseases at the top, and when you click on one of them, you can find suggestions on how to 2...... whatever is bothering you. For example, if you touch something hot and have a 3....., you should use cool water and some aloe vera. I've tried only one of these things – putting an onion on a mosquito 4...... on my leg. I was quite surprised at how much it helped. Although I like natural products, I still 5..... my vitamins each morning and next week, just like every year, I'll go to my doctor for 6.....

1 (i go	to my doctor for	-	•		
1	Α	treatments	В	surgeries	C	symptoms
2	Α	get out of	В	recover	C	treat
3	Α	cut	В	burn	C	sore throat
4	Α	bite	В	fever	C	flu
5	Α	go for	В	keep	C	take
6	Α	an infection	В	a backache	C	a check-up

- 3 Choose the correct alternative.
 - 1 Good mental health / prescription allows you to enjoy life and deal with negative experiences.
 - 2 Doctors say that we should do surgery / a blood test once a year to check that we don't suffer from any diseases.

- 3 There's usually no point in trying to treat / recover a cold with antibiotics because antibiotics fight bacteria not viruses.
- 4 Julie's blood test results weren't good, so her doctor ordered her to **cure** / **take vitamins** and eat more healthily.
- 5 It's important to **keep in shape** / **go for a check-up** every year. It helps the doctor to see if you don't have any serious diseases.
- 6 When I have a sore throat, I drink tea with honey. I think such natural **treatments** / **symptoms** can be as effective as the tablets you get at the chemist's.

4	EXTEND	Complete the sentences with the correct form of
	the word	s in brackets. In each case, there is one word you
	do not ne	eed.

do	not need.
1	The flu helps your system t fight the disease. (germ, immune, vaccination)
2	When my grandpa had a heart attack, thearrived in less than ten minutes. The doctor my grandad and decided he needed to be
3	taken to hospital. (ambulance, examine, sneeze) The accident was two weeks ago, and Ollie still has a deep below his knee. It's slowly and it doesn't hurt him much. (examine, heal, wound)
4	If you cover your mouth when you, you'll stop from spreading. (germs, sneeze, vaccination)

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words below.

ambulance examine germ heal immune sneeze vaccination wound

1	The nurse removed the bandage to check if the
	had begun to heal.
2	cause diseases when they spread from on
	person to another by coughing, talking or touching.
3	We were travelling on a motorway when three
	passed by us. We thought there had been

traffic jams.

4 Strong perfume always makes me ______. It might be because of their rich smell.

an accident ahead, so we took the next exit to avoid

5 There are some diseases that once you've had it as a child, you're _______ to it for the rest of your life.

6 I was ______ by an eye doctor twice, but he didn't find any signs of infection which could make my left eye burn and water.

7 There are a few _____ required for newborn babies in the first six months of their lives.

8 Use this cream on any cuts or wounds. It'll help them to _____ faster.

6 Do a short project about possible health problems you can have when you are on holiday. Write a short report and prepare to give a presentation to the class.

Find out and describe ...

- five possible health problems or illnesses that often happen when you're on holiday.
- how you can avoid or prepare for these problems.
- · what you should do once you have them.

Personal description and Types of relatives

1 PRACTISE Complete the comments with the words below.

cope well with determined fairly on the bright side sociable such a positive attitude to to complain upset easily

∨ Comments
@Martin My brother Matt has ¹
@Bako I'm ³ cheerful. Even if there's a problem, I try to look ⁴
@Anita I tend ⁵ too much, at least that's what my friends tell me. I think I only do it when I'm dissatisfied with something, but they say I do it all the time.
@Iris I'm definitely ⁶ ! I love being around people and this always makes me feel good, but I don't ⁷ stress. When we have a test at school, I get really nervous!
@Mike I'm a very ⁸ person. If I have a plan to do something, I'll definitely do it. It may sound great, but it often makes me miserable.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words below.

	ancestors bring up get-together great-grandmother look up to on my mum's side stepsister
1	Abigail's parents worked abroad when she was a little girl, so she was mostly by her grandparents.
2	Ayesha is my When our parents got married, she moved in with us.
3	Leo has always his older brother. He wants to be like him!
4	My grandpa is turning 70 next week so there'll be a huge family on Sunday.
5	Ethan's were Irish and Italian, but he has never been to Europe.
6	My died at the age of 95. My grandma says she takes good care of herself so she will live even longer!
7	I rarely see my cousins This is because my

mum's sister lives in New Zealand.

- 3 **EXTEND** Choose the correct alternative.
 - 1 My cousins Josh and Austin aren't twins but they look alike / socialise.
 - 2 If you want to be a good manager, you need to have great open-minded / people skills.
 - 3 That was a very rude things to say! Next time try being more immature / sensitive to other people's feelings.
 - 4 Dylan is eighteen years old, but he's still very close-knit / immature.
 - 5 My sister is at university, but I think she spends more time looking alike / socialising than studying.
 - 6 Parents complain that their **adolescent** / **people skills** children spend too much time on their phones.
 - **7 Open-minded / Sensitive** people aren't afraid to ask questions and leave their comfort zone.
 - 8 We're a really **close-knit** / **adolescent** team. We spend a lot of time together and support each other.
- **4** Complete the second sentence so that it has the same meaning as the first. Use the words below.

adolescent close-knit immature look alike

open-minded	people skills	sensitive	socialise	
,	It's really difficult to accept other people's opinions who you don't agree with them.			
It's really diffic agree with sor			when you don't	
2 Most problems	Most problems that teenagers have disappear with time.			
Most	di	sappear wit	h time.	
3 My brother and	My brother and I look completely different.			
My brother and	My brother and I			

- 4 We're a very supportive and loving family. We're ______.
- 5 My sister turned ten last week, but she still behaves like a five-year-old.
 My sister is ten, but she ______.

6 In my opinion, all shop assistants need to know how to deal with people.

In my opinion, all shop assistants need to

7 We really like our new neighbours so we often spend time with them.

We really like our new neighbours so we often

8 You need to deal with these types of situations in a way which wouldn't hurt anyone's feelings.
You need to deal with these types of situations

- **5** Do a short project about family relations. Ask your friends and family ...
 - · who brought them up and who they take after.
 - who they look up to in their family or whose footsteps they would like to follow in and why.
 - who their favourite relative on their mum / dad's side is and what this relative is like.
 - what they have in common with their close family or siblings.

International trade and Saving up

1 PRACTISE Complete the fragments of news articles with the words below.

demand distribution goods manufacturing market packaged retail stock

'A new phone company is expected to enter the 1 in the spring.'

'Over 300 families were waiting for during an event organised by a local charity.'

'There's been an increasing 3 for houses with gardens. People want to grow their own vegetables or plant flowers.'

'We're expecting the 4 prices of shoes and accessories to fall by 10% in spring.'

'Doctors warn that eating too much 5 food may be the cause of many diseases.'

✓ Trending

'After the factory producing parts for cars was closed, 1,200 people lost their jobs in 6

'A leading supermarket chain promises to reduce the prices of basic ⁷ such as meat or eggs.'

'Toilet paper and hand sanitisers were in the first weeks of the coronavirus pandemic in 2020.

- 2 Choose the correct answer: A, B, or C.
 - 1 Where's the nearest ____? I need to withdraw some cash.
 - A ACM
- B ATM
- **C** MCM
- 2 I'm trying to set a realistic ____ for this year, but a lot depends on whether I'm going to get a pay rise.
 - A bank statement B interest rate
- C savings goal
- 3 Everyone keeps saying that they have to pay too much ____.
- A deposit
- B tax
- C lender
- 4 Dad is the only person in our family who makes most of his ___ by cheque.
 - A payments
- **B** loans
- C wages
- 5 The bank accidently ___ my account with £100. I never made such a deposit.
 - A withdrew
- **B** credited
- C took out
- 6 Some ___ charge very high interest rates when you want to take out a loan.
 - A debts
- B bank statements C lenders

3 Choose the correct alternative.

What makes economy grow?

Countries need to build a strong economy to function well, but in order to achieve this goal we, the ¹consumers / retailers, are needed the most. Every day when we pay for services or buy things, we create the ²supply / demand for the ³stock / production of goods by companies. Only one-third of the money we earn we spend on ⁴goods / trade such as clothes, household appliances or food. The remaining two-thirds of our money is spent on services such as banking, education, transport or medical treatment. Taking out ⁵a loan / cash is also good for economy. That's why some governments make it easier for us, by, for example, reducing the 6 interest rate / bank statement we're charged in our banks.

4 EXTEND Match questions 1–8 to answers A–H.

- 1 What did he do with the money he'd earned working as a gardener in the summer?
- 2 Why has he paid so much for his last order of school
- **3** What do you think of digital currencies, like Bitcoin?
- 4 What is this building on the left? _
- 5 Why does he keep a blog if he has a job? ___
- 6 Why hasn't he signed his employment contract yet?
- 7 Why isn't he going to buy a new laptop? ____
- 8 Why has he given you £10? ___
- A It's an old warehouse, but I don't know what it's used for now.
- **B** They're a good **investment**.
- **C** He **transferred** it to a savings account.
- **D** It might because the **shipping** cost was so high.
- **E** He **owed** me for the coffee we had last week.
- F He's still negotiating his salary.
- G It isn't in his budget for this year.
- H It adds to his monthly income.

I'm thinking of calling them and 6_

we order larger quantities of books.

5 Complete the short texts with the correct form of the words below. In each case, there are three words you do not need.

budget investment negotiate owe transfer warehouse Dave promised he would finally 1_ me to my account. I know he lost his part-time job and his 3 is low, but I need this money too! income investment negotiate owe shipping warehouse We've been buying rare and antique books as a form of _. When they completely disappear from the market, we can resell them at a higher price. We've recently found a great second-hand bookshop in Paris but, unfortunately, their standard cost of ⁵_

6 Do a survey to find out what your family and friends' savings goals are. Ask how they're planning to achieve it. Write a short report and prepare to give a presentation to the class.

that price if

3 EXTEND Choose the correct answer: A, B or C.

Home and Housing

2

P	RACTISE Match the sentence halves.	1 There's a street lamp directly outside my bedroom	
1	Our flat is cool on hot summer days	window. It's so bright at night that I need	
2	We can have a table, six chairs, a sofa, a coffee table and	A tenants B patios C blinds	
	two bookshelves in our living room	2 In the summer, we often have a barbecue or eat lunch	on
3	The dark green rug looks great in the study	the	
4	I like hanging out in my grandma's tiny living room in the	A security deposit B fireplace C patio	
	evenings	3 My neighbour has got a spare room which he usually	
5	You have to go downstairs to get your old photo	rents to students. He's currently looking for a new	In
	albums	case you're interested. A tenant B landlord C security dep	:
	We have four standing lamps in the living room	, ,	
7	To see grandad's old letters you have to climb up these	4 When we moved in here, all the bedrooms were, b there was this table and the armchairs in the living roo	
	stairs	A decorated B unfurnished C blinds	1111.
8	This is the most comfortable place to sit on	5 At the same time you sign the contract, you have to pa	
Α	because we keep them in the basement .	— which is equal to one month's rent.	ly d
	because we keep them in the attic .	A security deposit B tenant C landlord	
	because it's spacious .	6 We finally our cottage last weekend. These walls	
D	because it has air conditioning .	haven't been painted for years!	
	because it's our new armchair .	A blind B unfurnished C decorated	
F	because it's warm and cosy .	7 I love sitting by the and looking at the wood burning	ng
	because there aren't any hanging from the ceiling .	A blinds B fireplace C patio	,0,
	because it matches the style of the curtains .	8 We're renting this flat from an amazing He will cor	ne
		and repair anything that breaks down immediately.	
	omplete the sentences with the missing words. The first tters have been given.	A landlord B tenant C decorate	
	If you're looking for a flat to rent, a a	4 Decide: (4)	
_	v during the day. It's important to know if	4 Decide if the sentences are correct (<i>C</i>) or incorrect (<i>I</i>). Correct the incorrect ones using the words in Ex 3.	
	the rooms aren't too dark.	1 The landlord has to pay the security deposit.	
2	This website helps you find rs. It has the	The tallutoru has to pay the security deposit.	
	information about who this person is and what they like	The walls in my bedroom have a new colour because i	mv
	doing.	dad has unfurnished them.	Пу
3	Rhys and Freya live in the same b of	dad has unfurnished them.	
	f She lives on the first floor and he lives on	3 If you sit close to the patio , you'll feel warmer.	
	the fourth.	3 Tryou sit close to the patro , you trice warmer.	
4	I'm worried because I lost my job and I won't be able to	4 Pull down the blinds if you want the room to be darke	r
	p the r on time this month.	4 Tall down the bands if you want the room to be darke	1.
5	There are only white t in	5 All the furniture on our security deposit got wet beca	1156
	this street. They all look the same and I often wonder	it was raining all night.	usc
6	how people remember where they live. D h in the suburbs are good		
0	for families with small children who need a lot of space	6 These tenants never pay the rent on time.	
	for the kids to play and a garden.		
7	We're going to celebrate tonight because my parents	7 She decorated the whole house in white. I wonder ho	W
	finally s the c for the house in	quickly these walls will get dirty.	
	San Francisco. We're moving next month.		
8	We're staying in an amazing hotel in d	E. Do a survivoy to find out the following among your family	
	Manhattan. It's within walking distance of the Highline,	5 Do a survey to find out the following among your family and friends. Then write a short report and prepare to gi	
	SoHo and the Empire State building.	a presentation to the class.	VE
9	The Torre Latino is a s in downtown Mexico	 What type of house do you live in? Is it in the suburbs o 	r
	City. The views from the top are breathtaking.	downtown? Would you prefer to live in a different type	
10	The tallest building in the world is the Buri Khalifa in	house? Which one?	
	Dubai. It is over 828 metres tall and has more than 160	 What is your house within walking distance of? 	
	S	What appliance couldn't you live without?	

• What furniture or equipment would you like to have in your bedroom or living room that you don't have in it now?

• What is your favourite piece of furniture? Why?

T	he	education system and Higher education
1		RACTISE Complete the text with the correct form of the ords below. There are two words you do not need.
		poarding coursework curriculum gain nand in resources sit use win
	fo th of th lea ha es	vent to an independent 1 school for the last ree years of secondary school. The 2 we llowed was different from other schools, but I think studying ere helped me 3 a place at university. We were ten busy all day from early morning till late in the evening. In e morning we did 4, 5 an online earning platform for self-study or studied in the library. We ad lots of homework and it was important to 6 says and assignments on time. I remember the day we were our final exams. I felt incredibly happy and lieved that I finally got there!
2		omplete the sentences.
		If you want to be a doctor, you should study
	2	Although studying doesn't have a clearly defined career path like law or business studies, it teaches you to analyse and interpret ideas and values in texts and understand how they impact culture and society. Many go on to work in Media, Communications and education.
	3	A lot of my friends would like to study
		because they'd like to work in business or finance.
		Daniela studied, but she doesn't work in court. She helps her clients by giving them legal advice or checking the contracts they'll be signing.
	5	If I were as good at computers at you are, I'd study
		and get a job as a software engineer or
	_	computer programmer.
	6	Martina wanted to study because she said she wanted to contribute to society by designing eco-friendly buildings.
3		omplete the sentences with the correct form of the ords in brackets. In each case, there are two words you

Although the ______ year starts on Monday, most students arrived on _____ last week to get their

_____ at the university so I've already

rooms ready and see their friends. Julie says she has Monday off. Her first classes and ______ are on Tuesday. (law, lecture, semester, campus, academic)

3 If you're thinking of a career as a journalist, you should

not _____ as your parents want you to. (media

studies, graduate, economics, campus, higher education)

started looking for job opportunities for_

(academic, graduate, semester, medicine)

definitely go on to _____ and study _

- 4 **EXTEND** Choose the correct alternative.
 - 1 We have fantastic master's degrees / seminars on politics because we're in a small group and have time to discuss different topics.
 - 2 Taking a crib sheet / gap year will help students see the world, learn about other cultures and might even give them some career skills.
 - 3 You'll be in serious trouble if you ever play truant / enrol again.
 - 4 Our science teacher gave Matt an F because she caught him using a **seminar** / **crib sheet** during a test.
 - 5 Yesterday, I played truant / enrolled on a Chinese course, but the classes don't start until on 12 September.
 - 6 My classmate Maddison speaks three languages and has a master's degree / gap year in economics from the University of California.
- 5 Complete the short texts with the correct form of the words in Ex 4.



Charlotte wasn't much into studying when she was in secondary school. She preferred _____ to attending classes. She never revised for a test and usually 2_ saved her life. Somehow, she finished school and decided to take a 3 _____ and teach English in Japan. This experience changed her life. During her stay in on a Japanese course and after

Tokyo, she 4 a few months she was able to communicate. Now she has _ in Japanese Language and Literature and gives lectures on Japanese culture all over the country.

Oscar 6	on a media
studies course	. These were very
practical class	es and Oscar
especially enjo	yed ⁷
with different e	experts. For a brief
moment, he even considered of	
	_ in business. Oscar
, , ,	nat it's the only
course he did v	where he never had
to prepare any	9to
either help him	study or on tests.



6 Do a short project. Choose five people who inspire you (your family, famous people, celebrities, etc.) and find out what their education looked like. Did they graduate from university? If so, where and what did they study? Write a short report and prepare to give a presentation to the class.

do not need.

2 It's my last _

1 Although the _____

Job application and Crime

1 PRACTISE Complete each sentence with the words

_	be	elow.	sometice with the	words		
	3	ask complete get (x2) have receive review stand out	application form job applications necessary qualific other candidates random questions reference wages	ations		
	1	Before my appointment I the they sent me by email. T	wh	nich		
		questions.	nere were about tw	refity		
	2	Tom is working as a gard summer. He's very happy high				
	3	Waiters and cooks in our				
			ce a week, on Mond	day, but		
	4	managers are paid monthly. To get a job as a flight attendant in good airlines you				
	•	need toa				
		by, for example, knowing	g more foreign lang	uages or		
		by having a positive attit		1 10		
	5	This was the weirdest jol was comp		r nad! I		
		and I really didn't know	,			
	6	Jenna hur	ndreds of			
			ery day but she can			
		find one that she likes or which she has necessary qualifications for.				
	7	How many actors do you	know that actually	V		
		the	to c	do their		
		job? Most of them haven	't even finished act	ing		
	0	schools. My new boss asked me t				
	8		m my former empl	over. It		
		should say how long I we carried out my duties.				
2		omplete the sentences w ords in brackets.	ith the correct forn	n of the		
		Have you ever small, for example a pac	ket of chewing gum	ns?		
		A group of cars in the south part of	the city.	ealing		
		I can't imagine why some (vandalism) the new ska	te park.			
	4	Police think that the	(burgle)	entered		

the house through the kitchen window which was

5 When Ellie saw a man in a black hoodie, a black hat

assumed he must be a _____

__ (criminal)?

and a scarf around their mouth enter the bank, she

6 Who was the first person to arrive at the scene of the

accidently left open.

3 Complete the texts with the correct form of the words below. In each case, there are three words you do not need.

break into burglar commit interview a few suspects

shoplifting vandalism witness
As soon as I noticed that our garage had been 1 , I called the police and 2 The officer asked me what was missing and promised that they would immediately 3 However, he warned me that it might be hard because there were no 4 I've just heard that they 5 , mostly people who had previously 6
the same crime in the area where I live. Unfortunately, they haven' caught the 7 yet.
arrest break burgle confess criminal pickpocket rob theft vandal
Yesterday evening I saw a 8 It was a girl in her early twenties, and she was taking a wallet out of someone's backpack. She hid it under her jacket and disappeared quickly. Luckily, the police saw her too. A few minutes later, they 9 her and she was probably taken to the police station. I wonder if she would 10 to stealing or if she would make up a story which would explain the 11 often 13 the law and later escape punishment.
EXTEND Choose the correct alternative.

- - 1 Although the man admitted to a criminal sentence / offence, he wasn't arrested immediately.
 - 2 Being a nurse has been seen as a traditional female offence / occupation for years, but now a lot of men do this job too.
 - **3** You can't be a teacher if you have a **criminal record** / **suspect**.
 - 4 Call that company and ask if they have any job occupations / vacancies.
 - 5 I wanted to resign / record but my boss gave me a rise which convinced me that it was worth staying.
 - 6 They do a lot of voluntary / vacancy work for the animal charity.
 - 7 The burglary **sentence** / **suspect** is a man in his early thirties. He was wearing a black jacket and jeans.
 - 8 The robber **resigned** / was sentenced to five years in prison.
- 5 Replace the <u>underlined</u> fragments of sentences with the correct form of the words in **bold** in Ex 4.
 - 1 The man was <u>punished and will have to spend</u> a year in prison because he broke into five houses.
 - 2 I've called three banks to ask if they need any employees.
 - 3 This is a very serious crime.
 - 4 Jamie didn't earn as much as he wanted so he decided to stop working.
 - 5 Please write your full name, age and the job you do.
 - 6 The police told the newspapers that there were three men who might have committed the burglary.
 - 7 Ayesha has never worked for free.
 - 8 Does your future employer need to see <u>a document which</u> says what crimes you have committed?
- 6 Do a survey to find out what your friends and family think is a suitable punishment for different kinds of crimes. Ask why. Write a short report and prepare to give a presentation to the class.

Unit 1		also	U2 Speaking	Can you tell m
Having a discussion p.17		not only but also	U2 Speaking	happened?
Expressing a preference / an op	pinion	Introducing more ideas		Do you know i to anything?
I'd go for	U1 Speaking	Moreover,	U2 Speaking	Checking und
As far as I'm concerned,	U1 Speaking	Furthermore,	U2 Speaking	What do you n
Personally, I much prefer	U1 Speaking	What's more,	U2 Speaking	I'm afraid I did
All things considered,	U1 Speaking	Additionally,	U2 Speaking	that.
Giving a reason or explaining a	n answer	Emphasising your point		Sorry, do you
In my opinion,	U1 Speaking	absolutely	U2 Speaking	repeat that la
When you think about it,	U1 Speaking	clearly	U2 Speaking	Giving advice
Agreeing and disagreeing	9	without any doubt	U2 Speaking	May I suggest
Good point.	U1 Speaking	in fact	U2 Speaking	I think the bes
I'm with you on that.	U1 Speaking	obviously	U2 Speaking	action is
I couldn't agree more.	U1 Speaking	definitely	U2 Speaking	You must
I'd take a different view on that.	U1 Speaking	Giving examples		It's really imp
I'm not sure I agree.	U1 Speaking	for instance	U2 Speaking	Sequencing p
I see it a bit differently.	U1 Speaking	for example	U2 Speaking	Starting
Interacting p.17	от ор отши	such as	U2 Speaking	First of all,
Keeping the conversation going	a a	like	U2 Speaking	To begin with
What does everyone else think?		Opinion essays p.32		The first thing
Would you agree with that?	U1 Speaking	Giving opinions		is
Don't you think that ?	U1 Speaking	In my opinion,	U2 Writing	Indicating the
·	OI Speaking	From my point of view,	U2 Writing	Next,
Interrupting someone	Ul Casalina	It seems to me	U2 Writing	After that,
Can I stop you there?	U1 Speaking	In my view	U2 Writing	Then,
Hang on a moment.	U1 Speaking	it seems obvious to me	U2 Writing	Before
Writing a review p.18		I'm convinced	U2 Writing	Describing tw
Background		I'm certain	U2 Writing	same time
It was first published / released in	U1 Writing	I believe	U2 Writing	While
It has sold more than 10 million	III Writing	Presenting a general situation	n	As
copies worldwide.	or witting	It's generally seen	U2 Writing	Meanwhile
Describing the plot		It goes without saying	U2 Writing	At the same ti
It tells the story of	U1 Writing	Giving arguments		Ending
The story / film / game is set	U1 Writing	First of all,	U2 Writing	Finally,
in		Moreover,	U2 Writing	To finish,
Describing the characters		Furthermore,	U2 Writing	Lastly,
The main character in the	U1 Writing	Similarly,	U2 Writing	Unit 4
story / film / game is		Firstly,	U2 Writing	Keeping the o
The relationship between the	U1 Writing	Secondly,	U2 Writing	Starting a new
characters is		Additionally,	U2 Writing	Guess what!
Giving opinions		Introducing contrasting argui	ments	Listen to this!
I really enjoyed this book /	U1 Writing	However,	U2 Writing	You'll never be
film / game.	LII Mairina	On the other hand,	U2 Writing	Have you hear
It really makes you think.	U1 Writing	Having said that,	U2 Writing	Changing the
It's a very slow read.	U1 Writing	Summing up		Speaking of
My only criticism is	U1 Writing	On balance,	U2 Writing	That reminds
Giving recommendations		To sum up,	U2 Writing	Oh, by the wa
I'd definitely recommend it.	U1 Writing	All in all,	U2 Writing	Anyway,
This book / film / game isn't for everyone.	U1 Writing	On the whole,	U2 Writing	Now that you
You certainly won't regret	U1 Writing	All things considered,	U2 Writing	Before I forge
reading it.	or writing	Unit 3		I nearly forgot
Unit 2		At the pharmacy p.45		mention
Organising your ideas p.31		Asking for advice		There's somet to ask / tell yo
Presenting similar ideas		Could you recommend	U3 Speaking	Funny you sho
as well as	U2 Speaking	something for?	112.6	that
both	U2 Speaking	What would you suggest?	U3 Speaking	Continuing th
similarly	U2 Speaking	What would you advise?	U3 Speaking	Back to what
equally	U2 Speaking	Finding out about the problem		As I was sayin
		Would I be able to see?	U3 Speaking	In any case,

In any case, ...

U4 Speaking

Can you tell me when this happened?	U3 Speaking
Do you know if you are allergic to anything?	U3 Speaking
Checking understanding	
What do you mean by that?	U3 Speaking
I'm afraid I didn't quite catch that.	U3 Speaking
Sorry, do you think you could repeat that last part?	U3 Speaking
Giving advice	
May I suggest ?	U3 Speaking
I think the best course of action is	U3 Speaking
You must	U3 Speaking
It's really important that you	U3 Speaking
Sequencing p.46	
Starting	
First of all,	U3 Writing
To begin with,	U3 Writing
The first thing you need to do	U3 Writing
is	
Indicating the order	112 14/-:1:
Next,	U3 Writing
After that,	U3 Writing
Then,	U3 Writing
Before	U3 Writing
Describing two things happening same time	ng at the
While	U3 Writing
As	U3 Writing
Meanwhile	U3 Writing
At the same time as	U3 Writing
Ending	
Finally,	U3 Writing
To finish,	U3 Writing
Lastly,	U3 Writing
Unit 4	
Keeping the conversation going	7 n 50
Starting a new topic	5 p.33
	IIA Canaldan
Guess what!	U4 Speaking
Listen to this!	U4 Speaking
You'll never believe what	U4 Speaking
Have you heard? Changing the topic	U4 Speaking
	III Speaking
Speaking of	U4 Speaking
That reminds me	U4 Speaking
Oh, by the way	U4 Speaking
Anyway,	U4 Speaking
Now that you mention that,	U4 Speaking
Before I forget, I nearly forgot to say / tell you /	U4 Speaking U4 Speaking
mention There's something else I meant	U4 Speaking
to ask / tell you Funny you should mention	U4 Speaking
that	, 3
Continuing the topic	
Back to what I was saying,	U4 Speaking
, ,	0+ Speaking
As I was saying,	U4 Speaking

Where was I?	U4 Speaking
Describing people p.60	- opeaning
General appearance	
attractive	U4 Writing
good-looking	U4 Writing
gorgeous	U4 Writing
handsome	U4 Writing
sporty	U4 Writing
stylish	U4 Writing
well dressed	U4 Writing
Height and build	
short	U4 Writing
tall	U4 Writing
medium-height	U4 Writing
skinny	U4 Writing
overweight	U4 Writing
slim	U4 Writing
Hair	
short	U4 Writing
long	U4 Writing
wavy	U4 Writing
curly	U4 Writing
straight	U4 Writing
dark	U4 Writing
blonde	U4 Writing
brown	U4 Writing
fair	U4 Writing
grey	U4 Writing
red	U4 Writing
bald	U4 Writing
Face	LLA MA-tata-
moustache	U4 Writing
beard	U4 Writing
blue / brown / green eyes	U4 Writing
Unit 5	
Asking for and giving advice p.	
Asking for advice and recomme	
What's the best thing to do?	U5 Speaking
How do you think I should? What about?	U5 Speaking
What would you advise me	U5 Speaking
to do?	U5 Speaking
Giving advice and recommenda	ations
It would be a good idea for you	U5 Speaking
to	
You really should think about	U5 Speaking
Tou realty should think about	
If I were you, I'd	U5 Speaking
If I were you, I'd You'd better	U5 Speaking
If I were you, I'd You'd better You need to	U5 Speaking U5 Speaking
If I were you, I'd You'd better You need to Your best option is to	U5 Speaking U5 Speaking U5 Speaking
If I were you, I'd You'd better You need to Your best option is to Have you thought about?	U5 Speaking U5 Speaking U5 Speaking U5 Speaking
If I were you, I'd You'd better You need to Your best option is to Have you thought about? Have you tried?	U5 Speaking U5 Speaking U5 Speaking U5 Speaking
If I were you, I'd You'd better You need to Your best option is to Have you thought about?	U5 Speaking U5 Speaking U5 Speaking U5 Speaking
If I were you, I'd You'd better You need to Your best option is to Have you thought about? Have you tried?	U5 Speaking U5 Speaking U5 Speaking U5 Speaking
If I were you, I'd You'd better You need to Your best option is to Have you thought about? Have you tried? Unit 6	U5 Speaking U5 Speaking U5 Speaking U5 Speaking
If I were you, I'd You'd better You need to Your best option is to Have you thought about? Have you tried? Unit 6 Hesitating p.87	U5 Speaking U5 Speaking U5 Speaking U5 Speaking U5 Speaking
If I were you, I'd You'd better You need to Your best option is to Have you thought about? Have you tried? Unit 6 Hesitating p.87 Buying time	U5 Speaking U5 Speaking U5 Speaking U5 Speaking U5 Speaking U6 Speaking
If I were you, I'd You'd better You need to Your best option is to Have you thought about? Have you tried? Unit 6 Hesitating p.87 Buying time How shall I put it?	U5 Speaking U5 Speaking U5 Speaking U5 Speaking U5 Speaking U5 Speaking U6 Speaking U6 Speaking U6 Speaking

Ì	How can I explain / say this?	U6 Speaking
	What I'm trying to say is	U6 Speaking
	Well, what I mean / want to say is that	U6 Speaking
	Let me think about that.	U6 Speaking
	That's a good question.	U6 Speaking
	It's hard to say, really.	U6 Speaking
	You mean (what I like doing at weekends)?	U6 Speaking
	Actually,	U6 Speaking
	Hesitating	
ı	Well,	U6 Speaking
	let me think	U6 Speaking
ı	you know	U6 Speaking
	you see	U6 Speaking
	I mean	U6 Speaking
	The thing is	U6 Speaking
	Indirect questions p.88	
	Could you let me know (if / when)?	U6 Writing
	Could you tell me?	U6 Writing
	I would be grateful if you could	U6 Writing
ı	I have been wondering	U6 Writing
	I would be interested to know	U6 Writing
	May I ask you?	U6 Writing
	Do you happen to know?	U6 Writing
	Could you answer a few questions?	U6 Writing
	I wonder if you could	U6 Writing
	Unit 7	8 20 14 4
- 1	a 1 // //	
1	Debating p.101	
	Presenting arguments	
		U7 Speaking
	Presenting arguments	U7 Speaking U7 Speaking
	Presenting arguments The first thing I'd like to say is First of all, / Secondly, /	U7 Speaking
	Presenting arguments The first thing I'd like to say is First of all, / Secondly, / Finally,	U7 Speaking
	Presenting arguments The first thing I'd like to say is First of all, / Secondly, / Finally, Countering someone else's arguments That may have been true once,	U7 Speaking
	Presenting arguments The first thing I'd like to say is First of all, / Secondly, / Finally, Countering someone else's arguments That may have been true once, but	U7 Speaking ument U7 Speaking
	Presenting arguments The first thing I'd like to say is First of all, / Secondly, / Finally, Countering someone else's arguments That may have been true once, but isn't only about Possibly, but have you thought	U7 Speaking ument U7 Speaking U7 Speaking
	Presenting arguments The first thing I'd like to say is First of all, / Secondly, / Finally, Countering someone else's arguments That may have been true once, but isn't only about Possibly, but have you thought about?	U7 Speaking ument U7 Speaking U7 Speaking
	Presenting arguments The first thing I'd like to say is First of all, / Secondly, / Finally, Countering someone else's arguments That may have been true once, but isn't only about Possibly, but have you thought about? Expressing certainty	U7 Speaking ument U7 Speaking U7 Speaking U7 Speaking
	Presenting arguments The first thing I'd like to say is First of all, / Secondly, / Finally, Countering someone else's arguments That may have been true once, but isn't only about Possibly, but have you thought about? Expressing certainty It's true to say that	U7 Speaking U7 Speaking U7 Speaking U7 Speaking U7 Speaking
	Presenting arguments The first thing I'd like to say is First of all, / Secondly, / Finally, Countering someone else's arguments That may have been true once, but isn't only about Possibly, but have you thought about? Expressing certainty It's true to say that I'm absolutely convinced that	U7 Speaking
	Presenting arguments The first thing I'd like to say is First of all, / Secondly, / Finally, Countering someone else's arguments That may have been true once, but isn't only about Possibly, but have you thought about? Expressing certainty It's true to say that I'm absolutely convinced that You can't argue with that.	U7 Speaking
	Presenting arguments The first thing I'd like to say is First of all, / Secondly, / Finally, Countering someone else's arguments That may have been true once, but isn't only about Possibly, but have you thought about? Expressing certainty It's true to say that I'm absolutely convinced that You can't argue with that. Asking for clarification	U7 Speaking
	Presenting arguments The first thing I'd like to say is First of all, / Secondly, / Finally, Countering someone else's arguments That may have been true once, but isn't only about Possibly, but have you thought about? Expressing certainty It's true to say that I'm absolutely convinced that You can't argue with that. Asking for clarification I'm not with you.	U7 Speaking
	Presenting arguments The first thing I'd like to say is First of all, / Secondly, / Finally, Countering someone else's arguments That may have been true once, but isn't only about Possibly, but have you thought about? Expressing certainty It's true to say that I'm absolutely convinced that You can't argue with that. Asking for clarification I'm not with you. Are you trying to say that?	U7 Speaking
	Presenting arguments The first thing I'd like to say is First of all, / Secondly, / Finally, Countering someone else's arguments That may have been true once, but isn't only about Possibly, but have you thought about? Expressing certainty It's true to say that I'm absolutely convinced that You can't argue with that. Asking for clarification I'm not with you. Are you trying to say that? Giving clarification	U7 Speaking
	Presenting arguments The first thing I'd like to say is First of all, / Secondly, / Finally, Countering someone else's arguments That may have been true once, but isn't only about Possibly, but have you thought about? Expressing certainty It's true to say that I'm absolutely convinced that You can't argue with that. Asking for clarification I'm not with you. Are you trying to say that? Giving clarification What I mean is	U7 Speaking
	Presenting arguments The first thing I'd like to say is First of all, / Secondly, / Finally, Countering someone else's arguments That may have been true once, but isn't only about Possibly, but have you thought about? Expressing certainty It's true to say that I'm absolutely convinced that You can't argue with that. Asking for clarification I'm not with you. Are you trying to say that? Giving clarification What I mean is Writing an essay p.102	U7 Speaking
	Presenting arguments The first thing I'd like to say is First of all, / Secondly, / Finally, Countering someone else's arguments That may have been true once, but Possibly, but have you thought about? Expressing certainty It's true to say that I'm absolutely convinced that You can't argue with that. Asking for clarification I'm not with you. Are you trying to say that? Giving clarification What I mean is Writing an essay p.102 Making general statements	U7 Speaking
	Presenting arguments The first thing I'd like to say is First of all, / Secondly, / Finally, Countering someone else's arguments That may have been true once, but isn't only about Possibly, but have you thought about? Expressing certainty It's true to say that I'm absolutely convinced that You can't argue with that. Asking for clarification I'm not with you. Are you trying to say that? Giving clarification What I mean is Writing an essay p.102 Making general statements Generally speaking,	U7 Speaking
	Presenting arguments The first thing I'd like to say is First of all, / Secondly, / Finally, Countering someone else's arguments That may have been true once, but isn't only about Possibly, but have you thought about? Expressing certainty It's true to say that I'm absolutely convinced that You can't argue with that. Asking for clarification I'm not with you. Are you trying to say that? Giving clarification What I mean is Writing an essay p.102 Making general statements Generally speaking, In general, On the whole, Overall,	U7 Speaking
	Presenting arguments The first thing I'd like to say is First of all, / Secondly, / Finally, Countering someone else's arguments That may have been true once, but isn't only about Possibly, but have you thought about? Expressing certainty It's true to say that I'm absolutely convinced that You can't argue with that. Asking for clarification I'm not with you. Are you trying to say that? Giving clarification What I mean is Writing an essay p.102 Making general statements Generally speaking, In general, On the whole,	U7 Speaking U7 Writing U7 Writing U7 Writing
	Presenting arguments The first thing I'd like to say is First of all, / Secondly, / Finally, Countering someone else's arguments That may have been true once, but isn't only about Possibly, but have you thought about? Expressing certainty It's true to say that I'm absolutely convinced that You can't argue with that. Asking for clarification I'm not with you. Are you trying to say that? Giving clarification What I mean is Writing an essay p.102 Making general statements Generally speaking, In general, On the whole, Overall,	U7 Speaking U7 Writing U7 Writing U7 Writing
	Presenting arguments The first thing I'd like to say is First of all, / Secondly, / Finally, Countering someone else's arguments That may have been true once, but Possibly, but have you thought about? Expressing certainty It's true to say that I'm absolutely convinced that You can't argue with that. Asking for clarification I'm not with you. Are you trying to say that? Giving clarification What I mean is Writing an essay p.102 Making general statements Generally speaking, In general, On the whole, Overall, Introducing facts	U7 Speaking U7 Writing U7 Writing U7 Writing U7 Writing U7 Writing
	Presenting arguments The first thing I'd like to say is First of all, / Secondly, / Finally, Countering someone else's arguments That may have been true once, but isn't only about Possibly, but have you thought about? Expressing certainty It's true to say that I'm absolutely convinced that You can't argue with that. Asking for clarification I'm not with you. Are you trying to say that? Giving clarification What I mean is Writing an essay p.102 Making general statements Generally speaking, In general, On the whole, Overall, Introducing facts In fact,	U7 Speaking U7 Writing U7 Writing U7 Writing U7 Writing U7 Writing

In reality, ...

U7 Writing

Adding emphasis	
It is obvious that	U7 Writing
Indeed,	U7 Writing
Clearly,	U7 Writing
	U7 Writing
Needless to say,	
Saying something is partially tr	
In a way,	U7 Writing
In some cases,	U7 Writing
To a certain extent,	U7 Writing
, up to a point.	U7 Writing
Explaining / Clarifying a statem	ent
In other words,	U7 Writing
To put it another way,	U7 Writing
That is to say,	U7 Writing
Unit 8	
Describing pictures p.115	_
What you see	110.6
The photo / picture shows / depicts	U8 Speaking
In this picture, I can clearly see	U8 Speaking
It was (probably) taken	U8 Speaking
On the right / left,	U8 Speaking
In the middle	U8 Speaking
In the top / bottom right / left-	U8 Speaking
hand corner In front of / behind / opposite /	
next to something / somebody	U8 Speaking
To the left / right of something / somebody	U8 Speaking
What you think you see	
What you think you see I think / guess / suppose	U8 Speaking
	U8 Speaking U8 Speaking
I think / guess / suppose It / he / she looks like / as if It / he / she could / may / might	
I think / guess / suppose It / he / she looks like / as if	U8 Speaking U8 Speaking
I think / guess / suppose It / he / she looks like / as if It / he / she could / may / might / must / can't be They seem to being.	U8 Speaking U8 Speaking U8 Speaking
I think / guess / suppose It / he / she looks like / as if It / he / she could / may / might / must / can't be They seem to being. Maybe / Perhaps it's a I suppose / guess he/she's	U8 Speaking U8 Speaking
I think / guess / suppose It / he / she looks like / as if It / he / she could / may / might / must / can't be They seem to being. Maybe / Perhaps it's a I suppose / guess he/she's about to	U8 Speaking U8 Speaking U8 Speaking U8 Speaking U8 Speaking
I think / guess / suppose It / he / she looks like / as if It / he / she could / may / might / must / can't be They seem to being. Maybe / Perhaps it's a I suppose / guess he/she's about to If I had to make a guess, I'd say	U8 Speaking U8 Speaking U8 Speaking U8 Speaking U8 Speaking U8 Speaking
I think / guess / suppose It / he / she looks like / as if It / he / she could / may / might / must / can't be They seem to being. Maybe / Perhaps it's a I suppose / guess he/she's about to If I had to make a guess, I'd say Judging by the fact that, I think / suppose	U8 Speaking
I think / guess / suppose It / he / she looks like / as if It / he / she could / may / might / must / can't be They seem to being. Maybe / Perhaps it's a I suppose / guess he/she's about to If I had to make a guess, I'd say Judging by the fact that, I think / suppose I have the impression	U8 Speaking
I think / guess / suppose It / he / she looks like / as if It / he / she could / may / might / must / can't be They seem to being. Maybe / Perhaps it's a I suppose / guess he/she's about to If I had to make a guess, I'd say Judging by the fact that, I think / suppose I have the impression Grabbing readers' attention p.1	U8 Speaking
I think / guess / suppose It / he / she looks like / as if It / he / she could / may / might / must / can't be They seem to being. Maybe / Perhaps it's a I suppose / guess he/she's about to If I had to make a guess, I'd say Judging by the fact that, I think / suppose I have the impression	U8 Speaking
I think / guess / suppose It / he / she looks like / as if It / he / she could / may / might / must / can't be They seem to being. Maybe / Perhaps it's a I suppose / guess he/she's about to If I had to make a guess, I'd say Judging by the fact that, I think / suppose I have the impression Grabbing readers' attention p.1	U8 Speaking
I think / guess / suppose It / he / she looks like / as if It / he / she could / may / might / must / can't be They seem to being. Maybe / Perhaps it's a I suppose / guess he/she's about to If I had to make a guess, I'd say Judging by the fact that, I think / suppose I have the impression Grabbing readers' attention p.1 Have you ever wondered? Would you agree if someone	U8 Speaking
I think / guess / suppose It / he / she looks like / as if It / he / she could / may / might / must / can't be They seem to being. Maybe / Perhaps it's a I suppose / guess he/she's about to If I had to make a guess, I'd say Judging by the fact that, I think / suppose I have the impression Grabbing readers' attention p.1 Have you ever wondered? Would you agree if someone told you? Are you one of those people	U8 Speaking
I think / guess / suppose It / he / she looks like / as if It / he / she could / may / might / must / can't be They seem to being. Maybe / Perhaps it's a I suppose / guess he/she's about to If I had to make a guess, I'd say Judging by the fact that, I think / suppose I have the impression Grabbing readers' attention p.1 Have you ever wondered? Would you agree if someone told you? Are you one of those people who?	U8 Speaking U8 Writing U8 Writing U8 Writing
I think / guess / suppose It / he / she looks like / as if It / he / she could / may / might / must / can't be They seem to being. Maybe / Perhaps it's a I suppose / guess he/she's about to If I had to make a guess, I'd say Judging by the fact that, I think / suppose I have the impression Grabbing readers' attention p.1 Have you ever wondered? Would you agree if someone told you? Are you one of those people who? How do you know?	U8 Speaking U8 Writing U8 Writing U8 Writing U8 Writing
I think / guess / suppose It / he / she looks like / as if It / he / she could / may / might / must / can't be They seem to being. Maybe / Perhaps it's a I suppose / guess he/she's about to If I had to make a guess, I'd say Judging by the fact that, I think / suppose I have the impression Grabbing readers' attention p.1 Have you ever wondered? Would you agree if someone told you? Are you one of those people who? How do you know? I don't think I'll ever forget () events proved me wrong /	U8 Speaking U8 Writing
I think / guess / suppose It / he / she looks like / as if It / he / she could / may / might / must / can't be They seem to being. Maybe / Perhaps it's a I suppose / guess he/she's about to If I had to make a guess, I'd say Judging by the fact that, I think / suppose I have the impression Grabbing readers' attention p.1 Have you ever wondered? Would you agree if someone told you? Are you one of those people who? How do you know? I don't think I'll ever forget () events proved me wrong / put my character to the test. When I look back at the events	U8 Speaking U8 Writing
Ithink / guess / suppose It / he / she looks like / as if It / he / she could / may / might / must / can't be They seem to being. Maybe / Perhaps it's a I suppose / guess he/she's about to If I had to make a guess, I'd say Judging by the fact that, I think / suppose I have the impression Grabbing readers' attention p.1 Have you ever wondered? Would you agree if someone told you? Are you one of those people who? How do you know? I don't think I'll ever forget () events proved me wrong / put my character to the test. When I look back at the events of that day, I still I would have never thought That moment, I knew my life	U8 Speaking U8 Writing
Ithink / guess / suppose It / he / she looks like / as if It / he / she could / may / might / must / can't be They seem to being. Maybe / Perhaps it's a I suppose / guess he/she's about to If I had to make a guess, I'd say Judging by the fact that, I think / suppose I have the impression Grabbing readers' attention p.1 Have you ever wondered? Would you agree if someone told you? Are you one of those people who? How do you know? I don't think I'll ever forget () events proved me wrong / put my character to the test. When I look back at the events of that day, I still I would have never thought	U8 Speaking U8 Writing

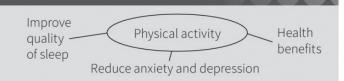
An online article

In an online article, you write to a wider audience about a subject that interests you. The article can be formal or informal, depending on your target audience and should give your thoughts and opinions as well as facts.

Example task: Choose one of the topics below to write an article: Looking after your mental health Stress and anxiety in a digital age The benefits of physical activity

Get ideas

- Choose one of the topics. Think about what you already know about the topic and make notes.
- Draw a mind map of ideas for each of the topics you want to include in your article. For example:



Plan

- Choose the best ideas from your notes.
- Think about who your audience is and what your purpose is for writing the article. Use vocabulary that will fit the topic content, and who it is targeted at.
- Organise your ideas into paragraphs.

 Introduction Introduce your topic and engage your readers.

Main body – Make clear and interesting points about your topic. You can use headings to organise your ideas.

Conclusion – Summarise the points in your article.

Write

Choose a good title for your article.

Start your article with an introduction which gets the reader's attention and introduces the topic.

Include occasional rhetorical questions to make the style more engaging.

Write in a simple, clear style appropriate to the publication (online newspaper, magazine, etc.). Avoid language that is too formal.

Use headings to direct readers through the text and draw their attention.

Include a short conclusion. This can detail your personal opinion, or the most important point in the article.

EAT HEALTHY, LIVE LONGER

We all know that sticking with healthy habits can improve your mood and prevent certain diseases, such as cancer and diabetes. But did you know that it can also make you live longer? That's right – it can actually extend your life expectancy by as much as 13 years. So why isn't everyone doing it?

Short on time

These days, we spend less time at home during the week. Few people have the time to prepare fresh and healthy meals and instead, choose processed foods which are quick and easy to prepare.

So, it is possible to live a busy lifestyle and prepare healthy meals? Let's take a look at a few simple things you can do.

Tips for eating healthily

know you hear this one a lot but eating more fresh produce really is one of the best things you can do to for your health. But did you also know that nuts and nut butters are linked to longevity? Try adding a spoonful of nut butter into your smoothies or stir into porridge.

Eat more meat-free meals

Not only would you be helping the environment by eating more plant-based meals, but you could add years onto your life. Scientists have discovered five areas, called blue zones, where people live the longest and happiest lives. And, one thing they have in common is that they eat primarily plant-based diets.

It's never too late to change our eating habits, and knowing the long-term benefits of healthy eating, I'll definitely be making some changes.

Tips for writing an online article

- Make sure the style of language used is consistent throughout.
- Use informal and colloquial language to engage your readers.
- Use headings to highlight the main topics in the article.
- Use a catchy title to grab your readers' attention.
- Use rhetorical questions to encourage the readers to agree with your point of view.

A descriptive essay

In a descriptive essay, you describe something, such as an object, person, place or experience and paint a picture of what you are describing by using descriptive devices and the senses.

Example task: Write a description of a place you loved as a child.

Get ideas

- Think about what the place looked like and how you felt there.
- Think about sensory details. What could you smell, taste, hear and see? What did it feel like to touch?
- Draw a mind map of ideas for each topic. For example:







Plan

- Choose the best idea from your notes.
- Organise your ideas into a paragraph plan, for example: Introduction – Include information about where and when your story happened. Main Body – Tell the main story in the second, third and fourth paragraphs. Conclusion – Bring your narrative to a clear end in the final paragraph.

Write

Give your description an interesting opening paragraph.

Use different narrative tenses – past simple, past continuous, past perfect, used to/would.

Use a wide range of vocabulary.

Use a mix of longer and shorter sentences – this will make your description more interesting to read.

Use time expressions and sequencers to connect events.

Describe feelings as well as events – this will make your description more entertaining and involving.

Include sensory details to engage your readers five senses of sight, hearing, touch, smell and taste.

Use figurative language such as analogies, similes and metaphors to help paint a picture in the readers' mind.

Use specific adjectives and nouns, for example I devoured my lunch instead of I ate my lunch.

I can remember the first time I climbed a mountain like it was yesterday. It happened last summer; while I was camping with my family. We used to go camping a lot in Nemo, our bright orange camper van, but this was our first time in Wales. The weather was igloomy; when we arrived, and all the mountaintops were covered by thick grey clouds. The morning of the ascent was no different

It was still early when we got to the busy parking lot from where the hike started, and a heavy mist had fallen over the valley. It was impossible to see more than 50 meters in front of you: It was quite cold, so I put my fleece on and headed to the start of the track

(When) we began hiking, I could hear cars on the road below, but all I could see was a white blanket of fog. The rocks along the path were smooth and wet to touch, and we had to be careful where we tread to not fall over on the slippery surface.

As; we came around the mountainside, the sun broke: through the clouds and we were able to see the incredible scenery and peaceful lake below. Ahead, the path snaked its way up and was dotted by people that looked like a caterpillar disappearing into the white cloud that still hid the mountaintop from view.

The climb got harder and steeper, and I was soon out of breath. When I'finally, reached the top, the views of the mountain range were breathtaking it was definitely one of the best experiences I've ever had.

Tips for writing a descriptive essay

- Be consistent with register. A descriptive essay is often informal.
- Give a clear description of the context so the reader knows when and where the event happened.
- · Use the past continuous to set the scene and to show longer actions, the past simple for main events, and the past perfect for events that happened earlier.
- Describe the atmosphere and feelings as well as what happened.
- Use descriptive words and provide sensory details, e.g. smells, sounds, sights, touch, and taste.

A literary character description

In a literary character description, you give the reader information about a character. For example, you might include details of the character's visual appearance, personality or interests. A good character description helps the character come to life in the readers' imagination.

Example task: Write a description of your favourite fictional character from a book or invent your own character.

Get ideas

- Think about the character's visual appearance. Physical attributes are the first thing we notice about a person and it's important to create a vivid image for your reader.
- Think about your character's personality and interests. A lot can be revealed about a character from things that interest them.
- Draw a mind map of ideas for each topic. For example:
- Draw a mind map for their personality, too.



Plan

- Choose the best idea from your notes.
- Organise your ideas into a paragraph plan, for example:

Paragraph 1

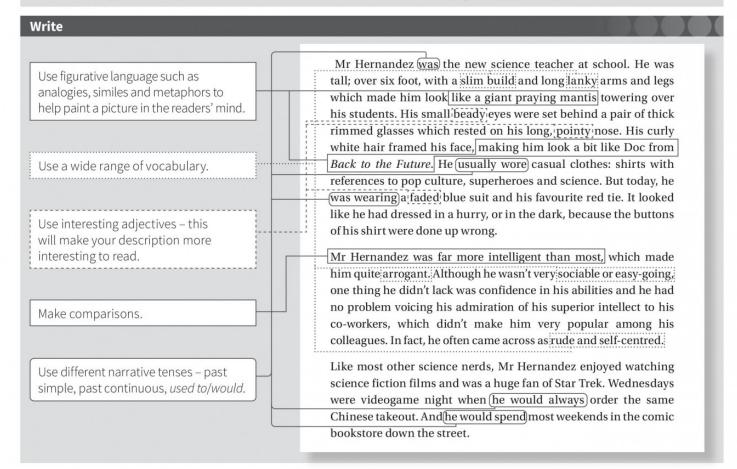
• Start with their physical appearance. Include basic details about the character: their name, who they are, and a description of their appearance and physical traits.

Paragraph 2

• Personality – describe how your character acts and behaves: How do they think? What do they do?

Paragraph 3

• Think about your characters interests. Characters are much more than their physical appearances.



Tips for writing a literary character description

- Use the past simple and past continuous for narrative descriptions.
- Use a range of vocabulary including descriptive adjectives, adverbs and verbs.
- Use figurative language, such as similes and metaphors.

A cover letter

In a cover letter or email, you explain why you are writing and what position you are applying for.

Example task: Write a cover letter for a part-time job.

Get ideas

- Write a list of as many part-time jobs you can think of.
- Choose one of the jobs from your list that you are most interested in.
- Think about why you would like this job and what makes you stand out from other candidates.
- Think about what skills and qualifications you would need for this job and give real life examples of your achievements to demonstrate these skills.

Skills	Examples
Strong organizational skills	Organized a fundraiser event at school

Plan

- · Choose the best idea from your notes.
- Think about the sort of language you need to use.

Write

If you're writing a letter, put your address and the date in the top right-hand corner. Put the name and address of the person you are writing to in the top left-hand corner. In an email, you don't need to include this.

If you don't know the name of the person you're writing to, use *Dear Sir or Madam* or *Dear Sir / Madam*. If you do know their name, use their title (*Mr, Mrs, Ms* etc.) and family name (*Dear Ms Smith* etc.).

In the first paragraph, say why you are writing and where you saw the job advertisement.

Say what documents you are enclosing. If you're writing an email, say *Please find attached my CV and a reference.*

In the second paragraph, give reasons for your interest in the job.

In the third and fourth paragraphs, give information about your achievements and experience.

You can use this phrase to bring your letter/email to an end.

If you started with *Dear Sir or Madam*, end with *Yours faithfully*. If you used *Dear Mr / Mrs / Miss / Ms* + family name, end with *Yours sincerely*.

If you're writing a letter instead of an email, print your name in addition to signing.

76 Mzima Springs road, Nairobi 3 September, 2022

Hiring Manager, Nairobi Leisure Centre, Parklands road, Nairobi

Dear Sir / Madam,

Re: Lifeguard position

I am writing to apply for the position of lifeguard at Nairobi leisure centre, which is advertised on your website. Please find my CV and a reference letter enclosed.

I am 17 years old and still at school. I believe that I have the skills and enthusiasm needed to perform the job effectively and that my passion for swimming makes me a strong candidate for this position.

As you will see from my CV, I have been on my school's swim team for the last couple of years, during which I have won a number of medals. I also train with my local swimming club and have recently been to Kampala to take part in an open water swimming competition against other swimmers from all over the world. In addition to this, my school offers basic first aid training and I have recently been awarded a level 2 first aid certificate. I also have some experience teaching children, as I often help out with the classes at my local pool on Saturdays. It have enclosed a reference from the manager at the pool for this job.

I would like to thank you for considering my application. I am available for an interview immediately and can provide further references if required. I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours faithfully,

Kamili Sauda

Tips for writing a cover letter

- The cover letter should be formal.
- Use the appropriate opening and closing expressions.
- Use full forms (I am), not short forms (I'm).
- Use formal structures, expressions and linkers, and avoid friendly, familiar language.
- If you're attaching documents to an email, make sure you give them clear names.

A report

In a report, you give information about a subject that you have researched.

Example task: Your class has recently been on a school trip camping. The school wants to improve students' experience for next year. They have asked you to do a survey and write a short report.

Get ideas

- Think about the subject of your report. Brainstorm different details you could focus on from the survey. For example, what the accommodation was like, the location of the campsite, etc.
- Make notes about the positive and negative points for each detail.
- Think of ways to improve the negative points.

Plan

- Think of a title for your report.
- Organise your notes under subheadings.
- Use a paragraph plan to organise your ideas. For example:

Paragraph 1

Introduction – explain the aim of your report. You can use phrases such as *The aim of this report is to, I am writing this report to ...*

Paragraph 2-4

Main details organised under subheadings – talk about the good and bad points. You can start the detail with a fact, for example, *Most students agreed* . . . It's a good idea to start with a positive finding before writing about the negative aspects.

Paragraph 5

Conclusion – Summarize your findings and make clear recommendations. You can use expressions such as *In conclusion*, *To sum up*, *Overall* ... and *I recommend* / *I suggest* / *We should consider* ...

Write

Give your report a title.

Explain the aim of your report.

Use headings to make the organisation of your report clear.

Use linkers of reason, addition and contrast to connect your ideas.

Include statistics to support your findings if possible.

Living off grid: To do or not to do

Introduction

Last week, our class went on a school trip to Findhorn ecovillage. After our trip, I interviewed my classmates about their experience there. The aim of this report is to analyse the advantages of living in a sustainable community and recommend areas of improvement.

Getting there

The community was completely off-grid and access was difficult due to the lack of public transport. Most students agreed that being so far away from the nearest town would mean they would have trouble getting to school. However, one third of students said they enjoyed being away from the city and surrounded by nature.

Accommodation

A lot of the students commented on how spacious the rooms were and 68% of people said that "it was the most stylish house they had ever seen".

Nevertheless, there were a few complaints about there not being any hot water for the shower and 26% of students said there was not enough storage space.

Food and drink

Almost all students said that they loved how fresh the food was, but, a few students complained about the limited choice of food since most of it was harvested from people's own gardens. Additionally, there were a few negative comments about all the meals being vegetarian.

Recommendations

In conclusion, for sustainable living to be more accessible, it would be better if they were in the suburbs of towns, closer to schools and other shops where there is a wider selection of food.

Tips for writing a report

- Use full forms (I would like), not short forms (I'd like).
- Use formal structures, expressions and linkers. Avoid colloquial language.
- Use headings to make it easier to read the report.
- Support your ideas with facts and statistics.
- End with a conclusion which gives a clear recommendation to the reader.

A Review of an event

In a review of an event, you give your opinion about a convert, festival, performance, etc. and say whether or not you recommend it.

Example task: Write a review of a show or event you have recently attended.

Get ideas

- · Choose a show / event to write about.
- Make notes about what you remember from the event.
- Decide whether you would or would not recommend it and think about why.

Plan

· Organise your ideas into paragraphs.

Paragraph 1

Introduction – give background information and your overall impression.

Paragraph 2

Give details about the show / event and say what you liked about it.

Paragraph 3

Give details about what you didn't like about it.

Paragraph 4

Conclusion – give your opinion and make a recommendation.

Write

Give background information and your overall impression.

Use adjective intensifiers to emphasize your opinion.

Talk about how you and other people felt.

Give reasons for your opinion.

Sum up your opinion.

Give a clear recommendation.

I recently went to a trail running festival which is held annually in my town. Although I like to keep in shape, I'm not really that into running as I get out of breath quite easily, but a friend persuaded me to go and I'm glad she did. The event was truly amazing and the views on the course were breathtaking.

The festival was held in a field surrounded by mountains. What I loved most about the festival was that you could take part in so many different activities - not just trail running. I particularly enjoyed watching the documentaries in the outdoor cinema. They were all about different outdoor sports, such as rock climbing, trail running, and hiking. My friend wasn't that into the films, but she loved watching the live bands and trying out the running gear from the shop.

If I have one criticism of the festival, it would be that the distances for the runs were quite long, for example 10k and 20k, but there wasn't anything for beginner runners, like me. Also, the cost of the food from the food trucks was extremely expensive. I didn't think it was fair to charge the festivalgoers so much as they had already paid rather a lot to get in.

In my opinion though, the festival was totally worth it. I had such a great time and would definitely recommend. If you get a chance to go next year, I wouldn't miss it for the world.

Tips for writing a review of an event

- Don't include too much factual information about the show or event. Just give essential details.
- Readers want to know your opinion, not just read a summary.
- Use a lively style to attract attention.
- End with a recommendation this can be positive, negative or mixed.

n = in the Oxford 3000 wordlist

All page numbers refer to the Student's Book

Introduction

A different exercise, p.4

athlete (n) /ˈæθli:t/ coach (n) /kəʊt[/ compete (v) /kəm'pi:t/ court (n) /ko:t/ get fit /get fit/ opponent (n) /əˈpəʊnənt/ opoint (n) /point/ race (n) /reis/ referee (n) /refə'ri:/

score (v) /sko:(r)/ spectator (n) /spek'teitə(r)/ take part in /teik 'pa:t in/ track (n) /træk/ train (v) /trein/

/ws:k 'aut/

/snm/

Travel the world? p.5

1 work out

3 a few (det) /ə 'fju:/ @ all (det) /s:l/ any (det) /eni/ 6 both (det) /bəʊθ/ @ each (det) /i:t[/ @ every (det) /'evri/ little (det) /'litl/ many (det) /'meni/ most (det) /maust/ several (det) /'sevrəl/ 3 some (det)

What if ... ? p.6

computer system (n) /kəm'pju:tə(r) 'sɪstəm/ hardware (n) /'ha:dweə(r)/ network (n) /'netws:k/ f program (v) /'praugræm/ 3 screen (n) /skri:n/ 3 software (n) /'spftwea(r)/ 1 update (n) /np'deit/ window (n) /ˈwɪndəʊ/

New old hobbies p.7

baking (v) /beikin/ decorating cakes /'dekəreitin keiks/ drawing (v) /ˈdrɔ:ɪŋ/

gardening (v) /'ga:dnin/ painting (v) /'peintin/ playing bingo /'pleiin 'bingəu/ sculpture (n) /'sknlpt[ə(r)/ sewing (v) /ˈsəʊɪŋ/ tamp collecting (n) /'stæmp kəlektɪŋ/ cheap (adj) /t[i:p/

deeply (adv) /'di:pli/ 1 interested (adj) /'intrəstid/ modern (adi) /mpdn/ popular (adj) /'popjələ(r)/

Unit 1

Film-making p.9 and p.120

Choose a location /tʃu:z ə ləʊˈkeɪʃn/ direct a film /dar'rekt ə frlm/ follow the plot /ˈfɒləʊ ðə plɒt/ Oplay a part /pler ə 'pa:t/ rehearse your lines /rɪˈhɜ:s jɔ:(r) laɪnz/ 3 say a line /sei ə lain/ use special effects /ju:z 'spe[l r'fekts/ • write the script /raɪt ðə skrɪpt/ act (v) /ækt/ character (n) /'kærəktə(r)/ director (n) /dar'rektə(r)/ ending (n) /endin/ episode (n) /'episəud/ /'hɪərəʊ'herəʊɪn/ hero / heroine (n) (n) journalist (n) /'dzs:nəlist/ magazine (n) /mæqəˈzi:n/ review (n) /rɪˈvju:/ 3 scene (n) /si:n/ stage (n) /steidz/

Real English p.9

title (n)

@ give it a shot /givitə [pt/ • playing it safe /'pleiin it seif/ smashed it /smæst it/ 3 Sorted. /ˈsɔ:tɪd/ You're kidding, right? /jo:(r) 'kıdın raıt/

Blogging p.11

be original /bi əˈrɪdʒənl/ come up with new ideas /knm np wið nju: ai'diəz/ connect with your audience /kəˈnekt wɪð jɔ:(r) 'ɔ:diəns/

/'taɪtl/

1 create content /kri'eɪt 'kontent/ focus on the positives /ˈfəʊkəs ɒn ðə ˈpɒzətɪvz/ @ get to the point /get tə ðə point/

1 use your imagination /ju:z jo:(r) ɪmædʒɪ'neɪ[n/

The written word p.12 and p.120

blogger (n) cover (n) /'knvə(r)/ edit (v) /'edit/ editor (n) /'editə(r)/ fairy tale (n) 1 horror (n) /'hpra(r)/ (n) journal /'d33:nl/ mystery novel non-fiction (n) opoet (n) /'pauit/ opoetry (n) /'paʊətri/

opost (v) publish (v) publisher (n) 1 romantic novel

3 science fiction novel

3 short story (n) songwriter (n) thriller (n) adaptation (n) blockbuster (n)

cast (n) genre (n) quotation (n) rehearsal (n) screenwriter (n)

villain (n)

/blpqa(r)/

/'feəri teɪl/ /mistri 'novl/ /non 'fik(n/ /paust/ /'pnbli]/

/rəʊ'mæntɪk 'novl/ /'saɪəns 'fɪkʃn 'nɒvl/

/st'sto:ri/ /'spgraitə(r)/ /ˈθrɪlə(r)/ /ædæp'teɪ[n/ /'blokbasta(r)/

/'pnbli[ə(r)/

/ka:st/ /ˈzɒnrə/ /kwəʊˈteɪ[n/ /rɪ'h3:sl/ /'skri:nraɪtə(r)/ /'vɪlən/

Unit 2

What a view! p.23 and p.121

3 admire the landscape at the edges of the cliff at the seaside breathtaking view cave (n)

coast (n) gorgeous scenery grassland (n)

1 mountain stream

/əd'maɪə(r) ðə 'lændskeɪp/ /ət ðə 'edzız əv ðə klıf/ /ət ðə 'si:saɪd/ /'breθteikiŋ vju:/

/keiv/ /kəʊst/

/'go:dzəs 'si:nəri/ /'gra:slænd/ /'mauntan stri:m/ **3** surrounded by a peaceful lake

valley (n) waterfall (n) woodland area

arrive at your destination

@ explore the area

19 get some time off from work go backpacking go canoeing go hiking

go rock climbing **1** set off on a journey /səˈraʊndɪd baɪ ə 'pi:sfl leɪk/

/'væli/ /'wo:təfo:l/

/'wodland 'earia/ /əˈraɪv ət jɔ:(r) ˌdestɪˈneɪʃn/

/ık'splo:(r) ðə 'eəriə/

/get snm taim of fram w3:k/ /gəʊ 'bækpækɪŋ/ /gəʊ kəˈnu:ɪŋ/ /qəʊ 'haɪkɪŋ/ /gəʊ rok 'klaımın/

/set of on a 'dzs:ni/

Real English p.23

as simple as that /æz 'sɪmpl æz ðæt/ bucket list (n) /'bnkit list/ dead tired /ded 'taɪəd/

didn't see the point /ˈdɪdnt si: ðə pɔɪnt/ G Fine by me. /faɪn baɪ mi/ miss out on /mis aut pn/

Worried about global warming p.26 and p.121

climate change (n) /'klaımət t[eɪndʒ/ deforestation (n) /di:fpri'stei[n/ nvironmental problem

 global warming (n) /qlaubl'wo:min/ greenhouse gas emission

harm (v) /ha:m/

have an impact on natural resources (n)

nuclear energy (n)

polluting the atmosphere opower station (n)

recycling waste renewable energy (n)

solar panel (n) sustainable (adj) wind turbine (n) endangered (adj) excursion (n)

@ generate (v) landfill (n)

reserve (n) shore (n)

/invairan'mentl'problam/

/ˈgri:nhaʊs gæs ɪˈmɪʃn/

/hæv ən 'ımpækt on/

/næt[rəl rɪˈsɔ:sɪz/ /nju:kliər 'enədzi/

/ˈpaʊə steɪʃn/

/pəˈlu:tɪŋ ðə ˈætməsfɪə(r)/

/ri:'saɪklɪŋ weɪst/ /rɪˌnju:əbl 'enədʒi/ /səʊlə 'pænl/ /səˈsteɪnəbl/ /wind ta:bain/ /in'deindzəd/ /ik'sk3:[n/

/'dzenəreit/ /ˈlændfɪl/ /rɪ'z3:v/ /(n:c]/

A post-carbon future p.28

/ˈkɒləni/ colony (n) filter (n) /'fɪltə(r)/ greenhouse (n) /'gri:nhaʊs/ handheld (adj) /'hændheld/ mineral (n) /mɪnərəl/ orbit (v) /ˈɔ:bɪt/ spread (v) /spred/

Dealing with a moral dilemma p.30

consequence (n) /'kpnsikwans/ duty (n) /'dju:ti/ face (v) /feis/ perspective (n) /pə'spektiv/ principle (n) /ˈprɪnsəpl/

Unit 3

Illnesses and injuries p.36 and p.122

backache (n) /'bækeik/ 1 burn (n) /b3:n/ cough (n) /kpf/ cut (n) /knt/ fever (n) /'fi:və(r)/ get a cold /get a kaʊld/ @ get out of breath /get aut əv breθ/ heart attack (n) /'ha:t ətæk/ (n) infection (n) /in'fek[n/ mosquito bite /məs'ki:təʊ baɪt/ sore throat (n) /so: 'Oraut/ the flu (n) /ðə 'flu:/ 1 break an arm /breik ən a:m/ do a workout /du: ə 'ws:kaʊt/

do yoga /du:'jəʊgə/ 1 have a cold /hæv ə kəʊld/ 1 healthy lifestyle /'helθi 'laɪfstaɪl/ high temperature /haɪ 'temprətʃə(r)/

injury (n) /'ındzəri/

10 look after yourself /lʊk 'a:ftə(r) jo:'self/

rest (v) /rest/ 3 suffer from /'snfə(r) frəm/

Real English p.37

a bit random /ə bɪt 'rændəm/ Hang on a sec. /hæŋ ɒn ə sek/ How come? /haʊ kʌm/ I'm epic /aɪm 'epɪk/

1 To cut a long story short, /tu: knt ə loŋ 'sto:ri ʃo:t/

Health foods? p.39

cut down (phr v) /kʌt daʊn/ depend on (phr v) /dr'pend pn/ @ get across (phr v) /get ə'krps/ go ahead (phr v) /gəʊ ə'hed/ go on (phr v) /na vsp/ Reep on (phr v) /ki:p pn/ put on (phr v) /pot pn/ work out /ws:k 'aut/

Getting better p.40 and p.122

blood test (n) /'blad test/ cure (v) /kjʊə(r)/ get a prescription /get ə pri'skrip[n/

go for a check-up /gəʊ fə(r) ə tʃek ʌp/ /ki:p in [eip/

keep in shape mental health (n) /mentl 'helθ/ natural treatment /'næt[rəl 'tri:tmənt/

recover (v) /rɪˈkʌvə(r)/ surgery (n) /'sa:dzəri/

symptom (n) /'simptam/ take vitamins /teik 'vitəminz/

treat (v) /tri:t/ ambulance (n) /ˈæmbjələns/ examine (v) /ıgˈzæmɪn/ germ (n) /dz3:m/ heal (v) /hi:l/

immune (adj) /ɪˈmju:n/ /sni:z/ sneeze (n) vaccination (n) /væksi'nei[n/

wound (n) /wu:nd/

Outbreaks p.42

contagious (adj) /kən'teɪdʒəs/ decimate (v) /'desimeit/ flea (n) /fli:/ infect (v) /in'fekt/ outbreak (n) /ˈaʊtbreɪk/ reside (v) /rɪˈzaɪd/ vaccinate (v) /'væksineit/ virulence (n) /'vɪrələns/

A role-play p.45

antibiotics (n) /æntibar'otrkz/ antihistamine (n) /ænti'hɪstəmi:n/ bandage (n) /'bændidz/ cough medicine /'kpf medisn/ cream (v) /kri:m/

liquid (n) /'likwid/ painkiller (n) /'peinkilə(r)/ plaster (n) /'pla:stə(r)/ 1 throat sweet /θrəʊt swi:t/

Unit 4

You know me so well p.51 and p.123

@ ambitious (adj) /æm'bɪ[əs/ cope with stress /kəʊp wɪð stres/ **1** get upset /get_np'set/ 1 lack confidence /læk 'konfidens/ look on the bright side /ˈpɒzətɪv ˈætɪtju:d/ positive attitude tend to complain /tend tə kəm'plein/ 6 be into the same things /bi 'ıntu ðə seim θinz/ cheer someone up /t[iə sʌmwʌn ˈʌp/ fall out with someone /fo:l aut wið 'snmwnn/ @ get on well with someone /get pn wel wið 'sʌmwʌn/ have lots in common

humour Reep in touch with someone

1 have the same sense of

1 rely on someone

/lʊk ɒn ðə braɪt saɪd/

/hæv lots in 'komən/ /hæv ðə seim sens əv

'hju:mə(r)/

/ki:p in tʌtʃ wið 'sʌmwʌn/

/rɪ'laɪ pn 'sʌmwʌn/

Real English p.51

can't thank you enough /ka:nt θæηk ju ɪ'nʌf/ 1 in for a surprise /In fə(r) ə sə'praiz/ made my day /meid mai dei/ 1 Not that I'm lazy or anything. /not ðæt arm 'lerzi o:(r)

'eniθɪŋ/

3 spot on (adj) /spot bn/

Types of relatives p.54 and p.122

adopt (v) /ə'dppt/ ancestor (n) /'ænsestə(r)/ 6 bring up /brin np/ brother-in-law /'brvðə(r) in lo:/ close family /kləʊz 'fæməli/

family get-together follow in your mum's/dad's footsteps

@ generation (n) great-grandfather (n)

look up to on my mum's/dad's side parent-in-law

related to sibling (n) stepbrother (n)

take after adolescent (adj) close-knit (adj) immature (adj) look alike

open-minded (adj) people skills

sensitive (adj) socialise (v)

/ˈfæməli get təˈgeðə(r)/ /ˈfɒləʊ ɪn jɔ:(r) mʌmz/dædz

'fotstepz/ /dzenəˈreɪ[n/ /greit 'grænfa:ðə(r)/

/lok'np tu/

/pn mai mnmz/dædz said/

/'pearant in lo:/ /rɪˈleɪtɪd tu/ /'siblin/ /'stepbr\ða(r)/ /teik 'a:ftə(r)/ /ædə'lesnt/ /klaus 'nit/ /ɪməˈtjʊə(r)/

/əʊpən 'maindid/

/'pi:pl skIlz/ /'sensətiv/ /ˈsəʊʃəlaɪz/

/lʊk əˈlaɪk/

Brought up with wolves p.56

adjust (v) /ə'dznst/ @ approach (v) /əˈprəʊt[/ mental illness (n) /mentl 'Ilnəs/ Observe (v) /əb'z3:v/ /ˈʃepəd/ shepherd (n) trap (n) /træp/

Unit 5

International trade p.64 and 124

bad weather /bæd 'weðə(r)/ @ expensive (adj) /ik'spensiv/ factory (n) /'fæktəri/ (n) increase (n) /In'kri:s/ oil (n) /JIC/ price (n) /prais/ reduce (v) /rɪˈdju:s/ West Africa /west 'æfrikə/ consumer (n) /kən'sju:mə(r)/ demand (n) /dɪ'ma:nd/ distribution (n) /distri'bju:[n/ export (v) /'ekspo:t/ goods (n) /godz/

import (n)	/'impo:t/
manufacturing (n)	/ˌmænjuˈfæktʃərɪŋ/
market (n)	/ˈmaːkɪt/
3 package (v)	/ˈpækɪdʒ/
roduction (n)	/prəˈdʌk∫n/
retail (v)	/ˈri:teɪl/
retailer (n)	/ˈri:teɪlə(r)/
3 stock (n)	/stpk/
3 supply (n)	/səˈplaɪ/
trade (n)	/treɪd/
3 borrow money from a friend	/ˈbɒrəʊ ˈmʌni frəm ə frend/
find a bargain	/faɪnd ə 'bɑ:gən/
3 get a discount	/get ə 'dɪskaʊnt/
get a refund	/get ə ˈriːfʌnd/
1 make a purchase	/meɪkəˈpɜːtʃəs/
3 open a bank account	/ˈəʊpən ə bæŋk əˈkaʊnt/
pay my own bills	/peɪ maɪ əʊn bɪlz/
1 place an order	/pleɪs ən 'ɔ:də(r)/

Real English p.65

Cheers, mate!	/t∫ıəz meɪt/
1 For sure.	/fɔ:(r) ʃɔ:(r)/
• Hands off!	/ˌhændz 'pf/
1 get the picture.	/aɪ get ðə ˈpɪktʃə(r)/
What a rip-off!	/wpt a rip pf/

The silk road p.67

🔁 benefit (n)	/'benɪfɪt/
cause and effect (n)	/kɔ:z ən ɪˈfekt/
change (v)	/tʃeɪndʒ/
consequence (n)	/ˈkɒnsɪkwəns/
contribute (v)	/kənˈtrɪbju:t/
development (n)	/dɪˈveləpmənt/
expand (v)	/ɪkˈspænd/
rowth (n)	/grəʊθ/
1 influence (v)	/'ɪnfluəns/
raise (v)	/reɪz/

Saving up p.68 and p.124

ATM (n)	/eɪ ti: 'em/
bank statement (n)	/ˈbæŋk steɪtmənt/
credit (v)	/'kredit/
😯 debt (n)	/det/
1 interest rate (n)	/'Intrest reIt/
lender (n)	/'lendə(r)/
loan (n)	/ləʊn/
make a deposit	/meɪk ə dɪˈpɒzɪt/
payment (n)	/'peɪmənt/

savings goal	/ˈseɪvɪŋz gəʊl/
tax (n)	/tæks/
😯 wage (n)	/weɪdʒ/
withdraw cash	/wɪθ'drɔ: kæʃ/
3 budget (n)	/'bʌdʒɪt/
income (n)	/'inknm/
investment (n)	/ɪnˈvestmənt/
negotiate (v)	/nɪˈɡəʊʃieɪt/
3 owe (v)	/9ʊ/
shipping (n)	/ˈʃɪpɪŋ/
transfer (v)	/træns'fs:(r)/
warehouse (n)	/'weəhaʊs/

Global consumers, global citizens? p.72

nimal rights (n)	/ˌænɪml ˈraɪts/
child labour (n)	/ˌtʃaɪld ˈleɪbə(r)/
nvironmental impact	/ɪnˌvaɪrənmentl ˈɪmpækt/
fair trade (n)	/ˌfeə 'treɪd/
greenhouse gas (n)	/ˈgriːnhaʊs ˈgæs/
plant-based diet	/pla:nt beɪst 'daɪət/
working conditions	/ˈwɜ:kɪŋ kəndı∫nz/

Unit 6

House tour p.78 and p.125

air conditioning (n)	/ˈeə kəndɪʃənɪŋ/
appliance (n)	/əˈplaɪəns/
armchair (n)	/'a:mtʃeə(r)/
attic (n)	/ˈætɪk/
basement (n)	/'beɪsmənt/
built-in wardrobe	/bɪlt ɪn 'wɔ:drəʊb/
ceiling (n)	/ˈsiːlɪŋ/
cosy (adj)	/ˈkəʊzi/
curtain (n)	/'k3:tn/
freezer (n)	/ˈfri:zə(r)/
match the style of	/mæt∫ðə staɪl əv/
spacious (adj)	/ˈspeɪʃəs/
3 store (v)	/sto:(r)/
take up space	/ˌteɪk ʌp ˈspeɪs/
tiny (adj)	/ˈtaɪni/
chimney (n)	/'t∫ɪmni/
cooker (n)	/ˈkʊkə(r)/
ntrance (n)	/'entrəns/
furniture (n)	/ˈfɜ:nɪtʃə(r)/
rug (n)	/rng/
sink (n)	/sɪŋk/

Real English p.79

Fat chance! /fæt t[a:ns/ find the time /faind ðə taim/ 1 Let me guess /let mi ges/

1 Let's get on with it! /letz get on wið it/

Ta-da! /tə 'da:/

Tiny but mighty p.81

barrel (n) /'bærəl/ eco-friendly (adj) /i:kəʊ 'frendli/ functional (adj) /ˈfʌŋk[ənl/ self-sufficient (adj) /self səˈfɪ[nt/ unique (adj) /ju'ni:k/

My kind of place p.82 and p.125

82-storey /'eɪti tu:'stɔ:ri/ @ arrange a viewing /əˈreɪndʒ ə ˈvju:ɪŋ/ 1 block of flats /blok əv 'flæts/ cottage (n) /'kptidz/ detached house /drtæt[t 'haus/ downtown (adj) /daun'taun/ estate agent (n) /i'steit eidzənt/ in the suburbs /ɪn ðə ˈsʌbɜ:bz/ 1 pay the rent /pei ða rent/ flatmate (n) /ˈflætmeɪt/ roommate (n) /'ru:mmeɪt/ semi-detached house

/semi drtæt[t 'haus/ **3** sign the contract /saɪn ðə ˈkɒntrækt/ skyscraper (n) /'skaiskreipə(r)/ terraced house /terəst 'haʊs/

(1) within walking distance /wi'ðin 'wo:kiŋ 'distəns/

1 blind (n) /blaind/ deposit (n) /dr'ppzit/ landlord (n) /ˈlændlɔ:d/ tenant (n) /'tenant/ unfurnished (adj) /n'f3:nI[t/

Adapting to change p.86

@ adapt to change /ə'dæpt tə t[eɪndʒ/ drastic (adj) /'dræstik/ inevitable (adj) /in'evitabl/ minor (adj) /'maɪnə(r)/ resist (v) /ri'zist/

Unit 7

The education system p.93 and p.126

10 boarding school (n) /'bo:dɪŋ sku:l/ certificate (n) /səˈtɪfɪkət/

gain a qualification /gein ə kwplifi'kei[n/

graduate from university /'grædzuət frəm ju:nɪ'v3:səti/ hand in coursework /hænd In 'kɔ:sw3:k/ log in to an online learning /lpg in tə ən pn'lain 'ls:nin platform 'plætfo:m/

/ma:k/

mark (n)

private school (n) /praivət 'sku:l/ qualification (n) /kwplifi'kei[n/ revise (v) /ri'vaiz/ Share resources /[eə(r) rɪ'sɔ:sɪz/

3 sit an exam /sɪt ən ɪg'zæm/

term (n) /t3:m/

win a place at university /wɪn ə pleɪs ət ju:nɪ'vɜ:səti/

assignment (n) /əˈsaɪnmənt/ attend (school) /əˈtend sku:l/ chemistry (n) /'kemɪstri/

drop out of (school) (phr v) /drop aut əv sku:l/

essay (n) /'esei/ fail a test /feɪl ə test/ @ geography (n) /dzi'pgrəfi/ pass a test /pa:s ə test/ physics (n) /'fiziks/

revise for a test /rɪˈvaɪz fə(r) ə test/

Real English p.93

Are you having a laugh? /a:(r) ju 'hævɪŋ ə la:f/

1'll say! /aɪl seɪ/ O No idea. /nəʊ aɪˈdɪə/ That's news to me. /ðætz nju:z tə mi/ 1 You got it! /ju gpt it/

A new way to learn p.95

aim for /eim fə(r)/ benefit from /'benɪfɪt frəm/ **1** depend on /dr'pend pn/ lead to /li:d tə/ prevent from /pri'vent fram/ result in /ri'zʌlt ɪn/ specialise in /'spe[əlaiz in/ 3 succeed in /sək'si:d ɪn/

Higher education p.96 and p.126

academic (adj)

campus (n)

computer science (n)

economics (n)

engineering (n)

graduate (v)

higher education (n)

law (n)

lecture (n)

literature (n)

opolitics (n)

psychology (n) semester (n)

> sociology (n) crib sheet

enrol (v)

gap year (n)

master's degree play truant

/ækə'demik/

/'kæmpəs/

/kəm.pju:tə 'saɪəns/

/i:kəˈnɒmɪks/

/endʒɪˈnɪərɪŋ/

/'grædzuət/

/haɪər edzu'keɪ[n/

/lo:/

/'lekt[ə(r)/

/ˈlɪtrətʃə(r)/

/'pplətiks/

/sar'kplədzi/

/sɪˈmestə(r)/ /səʊsi'plədzi/

/'krib (i:t/

/In'raul/

/'gæp jɪə(r)/

/'ma:stəz digri:/

/plei 'tru:ənt/

Studying abroad p.98

easy-going (adj)

English-speaking (adj)

five-month (adj)

highly respected (adj)

life-changing (adj) self-confident (adj)

well educated (adj)

/i:zi ˈgəʊɪŋ/

/'ɪŋqlɪ['spi:kɪŋ/

/faiv mʌnθ/

/'haɪli rɪ'spektɪd/

/'laift[eindzin/

/self 'konfidant/

/wel 'edzukeitid/

Unit 8

Looking for a job p.106 and p.127

ask random questions at an

interview

being given a high hourly

rate

being headhunted

complete an application

form

nget a reference (from your

current or former employer)

have the necessary qualifications

1 having an appointment with

a future employer hire someone

/a:sk 'rændəm 'kwest[ənz ət ən 'ıntəvju:/

/ˈbiːɪŋ ˈgɪvn ə haɪ ˈaʊəli reɪt/

/'bi:ɪŋ 'hedhʌntɪd/

/kəm'pli:t ən æplī'keī[n fɔ:m/

/get ə 'refrəns frəm jo:(r) 'knrənt /(r) fo:mə(r) im'ploie(r)/

/hæv ðə 'nesəsəri kwplifi'kei[nz/

/ˈhævɪŋ ən əˈpɔɪntmənt wɪð ə

'fju:t[ə(r) ım'plɔɪə(r)/

/'haɪə(r) 'sʌmwʌn/

hourly rate

interviewing candidates monthly salary

• receive wages

review the job description

send an up-to-date CV

stand out against other candidates

carry out duties on time

@ get time off school

stay at home

10 look after children

study at home

③ succeed in changing your

lifestyle

take up a position as a shop

work in a team

assistant

work on the checkout

Real English p.107

Are you having me on?

1 blow his chances

@ get it wrong

have a good laugh

1 swear

tough luck

Crime p.110 and p.127

arrest (v)

O break the law

burglar (n)

burglary (n)

commit a crime

confess to (the crime)

G criminal (n)

1 interview suspects

launch an investigation

pickpocket (n)

report a crime

robber (n)

robbery (n)

shoplifter (n)

3 solve the mystery

theft (n)

thief (n)

vandal (n)

/aʊəli 'reɪt/

/'ıntəvju:ɪŋ 'kændıdətz/

/'mʌnθli 'sæləri/

/rɪˈsiːv ˈweɪdʒɪz/

/rɪˈvju: ðə dʒpb dɪˈskrɪp[n/ /send ən np tə deɪt ˌsi: 'vi:/

/stænd aut əˈgenst ˈʌðə(r)

'kændıdətz/

/ˈkæri aʊt ˈdjuːtiz ɒn taɪm/

/get tarm of sku:l/

/ster at haum/

/lʊk ˈa:ftə(r) ˈt[ɪldrən/

/'stʌdi ət həʊm/

/sək'si:d In 't[eɪndʒɪŋ jɔ:(r)

'laifstail/

/teik vb ə bə zilu əz ə lbb

ə'sıstənt/

/ws:k In a ti:m/

/ws:k pn ðə 't[ekaʊt/

/a:(r) ju 'hævɪŋ mi ɒn/

/bləʊ hɪz 't[a:nsɪz/

/get it ron/ /hæv ə god la:f/

/ai sweə(r)/

/tnflnk/

/əˈrest/

/breik ða lo:/

/'b3:glə(r)/

/'bs:gləri/

/kəˈmɪt ə kraɪm/

/kənˈfes tə ðə kraɪm/ /ˈkrɪmɪnl/

/'intəvju: sə'spekts/

/lɔ:nt[ən ɪnˌvestɪˈgeɪ[n/

/'pikpokit/

/rɪˈpɔ:t ə kraɪm/

/'rpbə(r)/

/'rpbəri/

/'[ppliftə(r)/

/splv ðə 'mıstri/

/θeft/

/θi:f/

/'vændl/

🐧 witness (n) /ˈwɪtnəs/

 ③ criminal record (n) occupation (n)
 /ˌkrɪmɪnl 'rekɔ:d/ occupation (n)

 ⑤ offence (n) /əˈfens/ resign (v)
 /rɪˈzaɪn/

 ⑥ sentence (n) /ˈsentəns/ suspect (n) vacancy (n)
 //səˈspekt/ /veɪkənsi/

Communication skills p.114

voluntary (adj)

 gossip (v)
 /'gosip/

 mumble (v)
 /'mnmbl/

3 offend someone /əˈfend ˈsʌmwʌn/

/ˈvɒləntri/

ramble (v) /'ræmbl/
(3 whisper (v) /'wɪspə(r)/



Great Clarendon Street, Oxford, 0x2 6DP, United Kingdom

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford. It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship, and education by publishing worldwide. Oxford is a registered trade mark of Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2022

The moral rights of the author have been asserted e-Book Edition

ISBN: 978 0 19 406455 2 CLASSROOM PRESENTATION TOOL

First published in 2022

No copying or file sharing

This digital publication is protected by international copyright laws. No part of this digital publication may be reproduced, modified, adapted, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, to any other person or company without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly permitted by law. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the ELT Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above

You must not modify, adapt, copy, store, transfer or circulate the contents of this publication under any other branding or as part of any other product. You may not print out material for any commercial purpose or resale

Any websites referred to in this publication are in the public domain and their addresses are provided by Oxford University Press for information only. Oxford University Press disclaims all and any responsibility for the content of such websites

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The authors and publisher are grateful to those who have given permission to reproduce the following extracts and adaptations of copyright material:

Sources: p.12 "Rare' Sir Isaac Newton work found on bookshelf sells for £22k', 8 October 2020, BBC News; p.22 'How climate change and pollution threaten me', 2019, BBC News; p.23 'How eating insects could help climate change', December 2015, BBC News; p.32 (audio p.205) 'Are any foods safe to eat anymore? Here's the truth', David Robson, October 2015, BBC.com; p.42 (audio p.207) 'The Power of Introverts', Susan Cain, TED2012, www.TED.com; p.67 Text A is a fictional account inspired by a real life scenario. Source 'Dream job? Hundreds apply to work on remote Irish island' by Rory Carroll,

Jan 2020, *The Guardian Cover images by:* Getty Images (Skyscraper/fzant), (Drummer/LightFieldStudios), (Abstract swirl/oxygen); Shutterstock (Surfer/EpicStockMedia).

Illustrations by: James Elston p.50 (shopping bags).

The publisher would like to thank the following for permission to reproduce photographs: 123RF (Alexander Raths, Andrew Bayda, jenifoto); Alamy Stock Photo (Cavan Images, Classic Image, CW Images, David Platt, DCPhoto, Everett Collection Inc, GL Archive, Glow Asia RF, Hero Images Inc., Hero Images Inc., Image Source Plus, imageBROKER, John Elk III, Keith Morris, Maximilian Weinzierl, Paul Thompson Images, Rebecca Cole, Stephen Barnes/Netherlands, World History Archive); Corbis Images (Lew Robertson); Getty Images (Sabah Arar, SDI Productions, Thinkstock); Oxford University Press (Chris King, Gareth Boden); Shutterstock (A StockStudio, Africa Studio, Air Images, Alex Gorins, Antonio Guillem, Arctic-stock, benjamas11, bsd, Callahan, Creatista, Dean Drobot, DenisNata, DimaBerlin, Edyta Pawlowska, El Nariz, Erika J Mitchell, fizkes, GaudiLab, Grinbox, Helen Hotson, HomeStudio, IndianFaces, insta_ photos, Jabirki Art, Jochen Schoenfeld, johavel, Jolanta Wojcicka, Ken McKay/ ITV, Konstantin G, Love Solutions, M_Agency, Marc Bruxelle, Maria Symchych, Martin Charles Hatch, Marvel/Disney/Kobal, megaflopp, MikeDotta, Monkey Business Images, Moriz, Moviestore, NadyGinzburg, Nattakorn_Maneerat, Neizu, Nejron Photo, Nokuro, Panu Ruangjan, Photographee.eu, Sailorr, Samuel Borges Photography, Sararoom Design, sirtravelalot, SpeedKingz, stockelements, Supriya07, Taisiya Kozorez, Tatiana Stulbo, Themalni, ThitareeS, Tim UR, Timothy L Barnes, Tobin Akehurst, Tomasz Czajkowski, vasanty, Vgreek, videnko, William Perugini, Wuttichok Panichiwarapun, ya_blue_ko, Yalcin Sonat); Survival Condo (© survivalcondo.com).

Commissioned photography by: MTJ Media pp.8, 18, 30, 40, 52, 62, 74, 84, Videos filmed and produced by: MTJ Media.

 $\label{lem:additional} \textit{Additional material (Exam skills and How to learn vocabulary) written \textit{by:} Weronika Sałandyk and Helen Wendholt.$

The publisher would also like to thank the following reviewers for their helpful comments: José Luis Rivero Amaya, Kati Elekes, Danica Gondova, Ferenc Kelemen, Eva Paulerová, Maria Fernada Puertas, Mehmet Seker and Kateřina Voleníková